

FORD **GALAXY / S-MAX** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2015

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3646en 01/2015 20150223151541

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual.....	7
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Data Recording.....	9
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	10
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	10

At a Glance

Front Exterior Overview.....	11
Rear Exterior Overview.....	12
Vehicle Interior Overview.....	14
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD.....	15
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD.....	16

Child Safety

Installing Child Seats.....	18
Child Seat Positioning.....	21
Child Safety Locks.....	25

Safety Belts

Fastening the Safety Belts.....	26
Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	27
Safety Belt Minder.....	28

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation.....	29
Driver Airbag.....	29
Passenger Airbag.....	30
Side Airbags.....	31
Driver Knee Airbag.....	31
Side Curtain Airbags.....	31

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	33
Remote Control.....	33

Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	36
--	----

MyKey™

Principle of Operation.....	37
Creating a MyKey.....	38
Clearing All MyKeys.....	39
Checking MyKey System Status.....	40
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	41
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	41

Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	43
Manual Liftgate.....	45
Power Liftgate.....	46
Keyless Entry.....	48

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System.....	51
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm.....	51
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	52
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	53

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column.....	56
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column.....	56
Audio Control.....	57
Voice Control.....	58
Cruise Control.....	58
Information Display Control.....	58
Heated Steering Wheel.....	59

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	60
------------------------	----

Table of Contents

Autowipers.....	60
Windshield Washers.....	61
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	61
Headlamp Washers.....	62

Lighting

General Information.....	63
Lighting Control.....	63
Autolamps.....	64
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	65
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	65
Daytime Running Lamps.....	65
Automatic High Beam Control.....	65
Front Fog Lamps.....	67
Rear Fog Lamps.....	67
Headlamp Leveling.....	67
Adaptive Headlamps.....	68
Cornering Lamps.....	69
Direction Indicators.....	69
Interior Lamps.....	70
Ambient Lighting.....	71

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	72
Global Opening and Closing.....	73
Exterior Mirrors.....	73
Interior Mirror.....	75
Childminder Mirror.....	76
Sun Visors.....	76
Sun Shades - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Panel.....	77
Moonroof - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel.....	78

Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	79
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	82
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	86

Information Displays

General Information.....	87
Information Messages.....	96

Climate Control

Principle of Operation.....	111
Air Vents.....	111
Manual Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Manual Temperature Control (EMTC).....	112
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	114
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/Sony Audio System.....	116
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control.....	118
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....	119
Rear Passenger Climate Controls.....	122
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	123
Heated Windshield.....	123
Cabin Air Filter.....	123

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	125
Head Restraints.....	125
Manual Seats.....	127
Power Seats.....	127
Memory Function.....	129
Rear Seats.....	131
Heated Seats.....	137
Climate Controlled Seats.....	138

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....	139
-----------------------------	-----

Storage Compartments

Center Console.....	141
---------------------	-----

Table of Contents

Overhead Console.....	141
-----------------------	-----

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	142
Ignition Switch.....	142
Keyless Starting.....	142
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With: Keyless Vehicle System.....	143
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles Without: Keyless Vehicle System.....	143
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	144
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	147
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	147
Switching Off the Engine.....	148
Engine Block Heater.....	148

Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop.....	150
----------------------	-----

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	152
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	153
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	153
Fuel Filler Funnel Location - Vehicles With: Spare Wheel.....	153
Fuel Filler Funnel Location - Vehicles With: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	153
Running Out of Fuel.....	153
Catalytic Converter.....	155
Refueling.....	155
Fuel Consumption.....	157

Transmission

Manual Transmission.....	159
Automatic Transmission.....	159

All-Wheel Drive

Using All-Wheel Drive.....	163
----------------------------	-----

Brakes

General Information.....	168
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	168
Electric Parking Brake.....	169
Hill Start Assist.....	171

Traction Control

Principle of Operation.....	173
Using Traction Control.....	173

Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....	174
Using Stability Control.....	175

Parking Aids

Principle of Operation.....	176
Rear Parking Aid.....	176
Front Parking Aid.....	177
Side Sensing System.....	178
Active Park Assist.....	180
Rear View Camera.....	186

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....	189
Using Cruise Control.....	189
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	190

Driving Aids

Speed Limiter.....	196
Driver Alert.....	197
Lane Keeping System.....	199
Blind Spot Information System.....	203
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	207
Pre-Collision Assist.....	208
Front View Camera.....	212
Drive Control.....	212

Table of Contents

Load Carrying

General Information.....	214
Luggage Anchor Points.....	214
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	214
Cargo Nets.....	215
Luggage Covers.....	217
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	217
Dog Guard.....	218

Towing

Towing a Trailer.....	221
Trailer Sway Control.....	222
Tow Ball.....	222
Towing Points.....	224
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission.....	224
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....	225

Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....	227
Reduced Engine Performance.....	227
Economical Driving.....	227
Cold Weather Precautions.....	228
Driving Through Water.....	228
Floor Mats.....	228

Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Warning Flashers.....	230
First Aid Kit.....	230
Warning Triangle.....	230
Fuel Shutoff.....	230
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	231
Post-Crash Alert System.....	232

Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart.....	233
Changing a Fuse.....	242

Maintenance

General Information.....	243
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	243
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	244
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	245
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	246
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	247
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	247
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	247
Engine Oil Check.....	247
Engine Coolant Check.....	248
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	249
Brake Fluid Check.....	249
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission.....	249
Washer Fluid Check.....	250
Changing the 12V Battery.....	250
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	251
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	252
Removing a Headlamp.....	253
Changing a Bulb.....	254
Bulb Specification Chart.....	257

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior.....	259
Cleaning the Interior.....	259
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	260
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	260

Wheels and Tires

General Information.....	261
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	261
Tire Care.....	264
Using Summer Tires.....	265

Table of Contents

Using Winter Tires.....	266
Using Snow Chains.....	266
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	266
Changing a Road Wheel.....	270
Tire Pressures.....	276
Lug Nuts.....	278

Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - S-MAX.....	279
Vehicle Dimensions - Galaxy.....	280
Towbar Dimensions - S-MAX.....	281
Towbar Dimensions - Galaxy.....	283
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	284
Vehicle Identification Number.....	285
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	285
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	287
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	288
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	290

Audio System

General Information.....	291
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/ SYNC.....	292
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2/ Premium AM/FM/CD.....	295
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2/Sony AM/FM/CD.....	296
Digital Radio.....	299
Audio Input Jack.....	302
USB Port.....	303
Media Hub.....	303
Audio Troubleshooting.....	303

SYNC™

General Information.....	304
Using Voice Recognition.....	305
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	308

SYNC™ Applications and Services.....	319
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....	326
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	334

SYNC™ 2

General Information.....	344
Settings.....	351
Entertainment.....	365
Phone.....	374
Information.....	382
Climate.....	386
Navigation.....	389
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	399

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	407
End User License Agreement.....	408
Type Approvals.....	430

Introduction

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

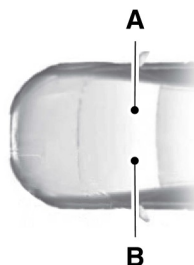
Note: This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

Note: Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

Note: Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Brake fluid - non petroleum based

Introduction



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten safety belt



Front airbag



Front fog lamps



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard warning flashers



Heated rear window



Heated windshield



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm

Introduction



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Service engine soon



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and errors.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunction and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of errors as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and error data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After an error has been corrected, these data are deleted from the error storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Introduction

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

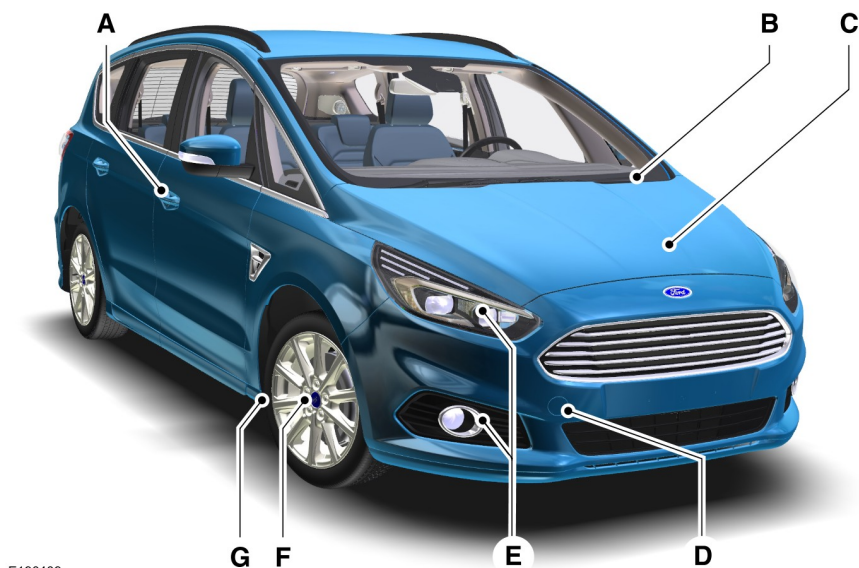
WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

At a Glance

FRONT EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



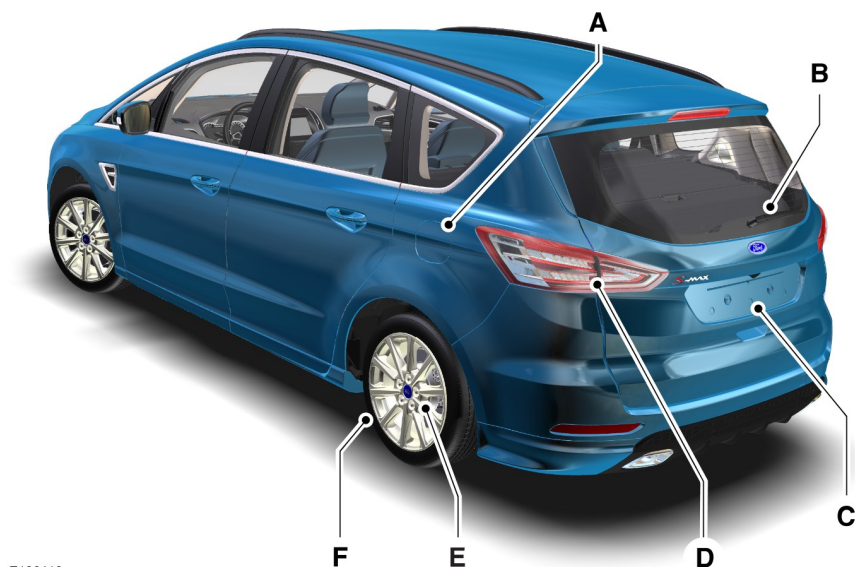
E190409

- A Locks. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 43).
- B Windshield wipers. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 252).
- C Engine. See **Maintenance** (page 243).
- D Front towing point. See **Towing Points** (page 224).
- E Front exterior lamps. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 254).
- F Wheels and tires. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 270).
- G Tire pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 276).

At a Glance

REAR EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

S-Max

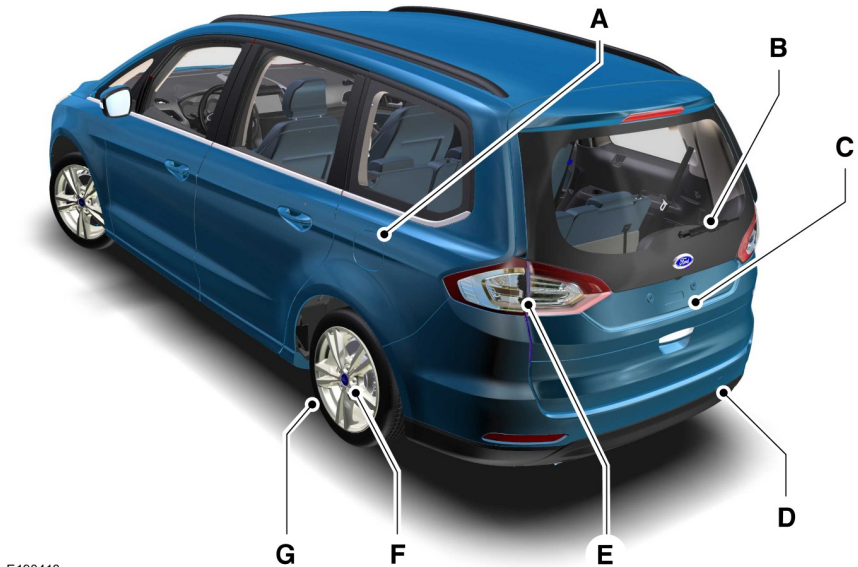


E190410

- A Fuel tank. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 152).
- B Rear window wiper. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 252).
- C Liftgate. See **Power Liftgate** (page 46).
- D Rear exterior lamps. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 254).
- E Wheels and tires. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 270).
- F Tire pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 276).

At a Glance

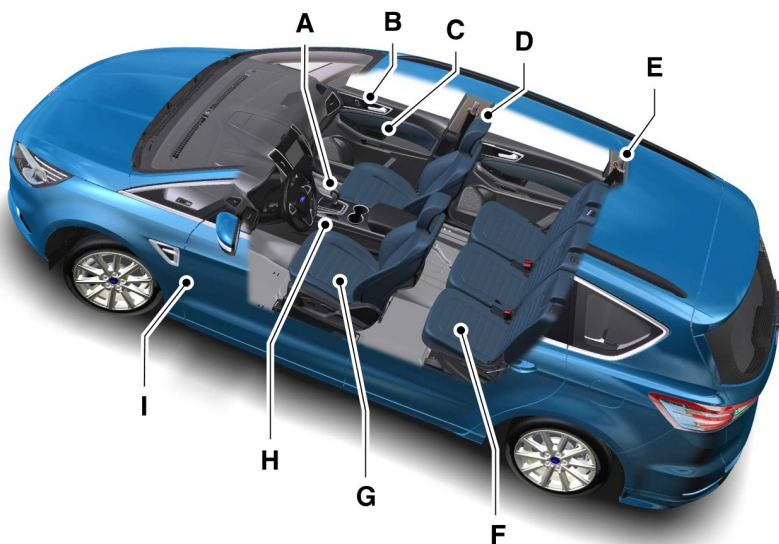
Galaxy



E190418

- A Fuel tank. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 152).
- B Rear window wiper. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 252).
- C Liftgate. See **Power Liftgate** (page 46).
- D Rear towing point. See **Towing Points** (page 224).
- E Rear exterior lamps. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 254).
- F Wheels and tires. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 270).
- G Tire pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 276).

VEHICLE INTERIOR OVERVIEW

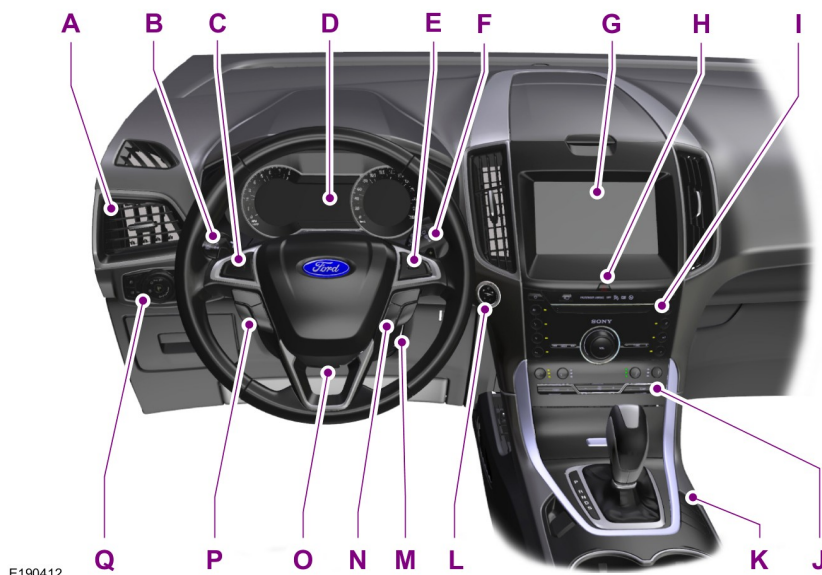


E190411

- A Gearshift lever. See **Transmission** (page 159).
- B Interior door handle. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 43).
- C Power window controls. See **Power Windows** (page 72).
- D Head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 125).
- E Safety belts. See **Fastening the Safety Belts** (page 26).
- F Rear seats. See **Rear Seats** (page 131).
- G Front seats. See **Seats** (page 125).
- H Parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 169). See **Hill Start Assist** (page 171).
- I Hood release lever. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 243).

At a Glance

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - LHD



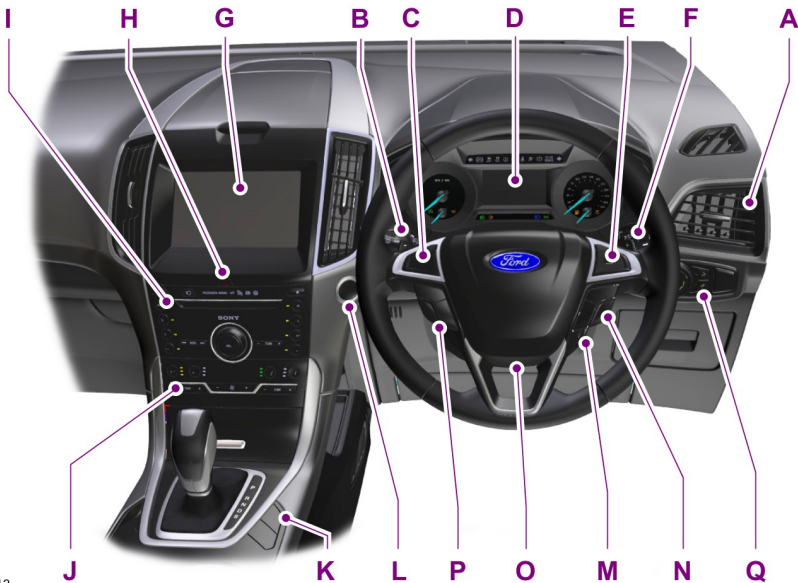
E190412

- A Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 111).
- B Direction indicator lever. See **Direction Indicators** (page 69).
- C Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 87).
- D Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 79).
- E Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 87).
- F Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 60).
- G Information and entertainment display.
- H Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 230).
- I Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 291).
- J Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 111).
- K Heated rear window switch. Heated windshield switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).
- L Keyless start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 142).

At a Glance

- M Ignition switch. See **Ignition Switch** (page 142).
- N Audio control. Voice control. See **Audio Control** (page 57). See **Voice Control** (page 58).
- O Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 56).
- P Cruise control buttons. See **Cruise Control** (page 189).
- Q Lighting control. Power liftgate release button. See **Lighting** (page 63). See **Power Liftgate** (page 46).

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - RHD



E190413

- A Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 111).
- B Direction indicator lever. See **Direction Indicators** (page 69).
- C Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 87).
- D Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 79).
- E Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

At a Glance

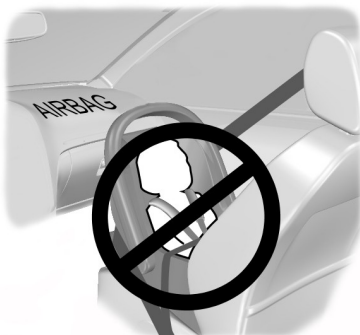
- F Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 60).
- G Information and entertainment display.
- H Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 230).
- I Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 291).
- J Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 111).
- K Heated rear window switch. Heated windshield switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).
- L Keyless start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 142).
- M Ignition switch. See **Ignition Switch** (page 142).
- N Audio control. Voice control. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 56). See **Voice Control** (page 58).
- O Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 56).
- P Cruise control buttons. See **Cruise Control** (page 189).
- Q Lighting control. Power liftgate release button. See **Lighting** (page 63). See **Power Liftgate** (page 46).

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD SEATS





E161855





E68916


WARNINGS

 Use an approved child seat to secure children less than 59 inches (150 centimeters) tall in the rear seat.


 NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.


 You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child seat. See **Passenger Airbag** (page 30).


 Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child seat.

 Do not modify child seats in any way.

WARNINGS

 Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

 Do not leave unattended children in your vehicle.

 If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child seats checked by an authorized dealer.

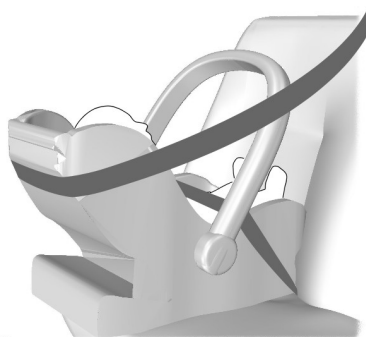
Note: *Mandatory use of child seats varies from country to country.*

Only child seats certified to ECE-R129, ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorized dealer.

Child Seats for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child seat as follows:

Baby Safety Seat



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 29 pounds (13 kilograms) in a rearward facing baby safety seat (Group 0+) on the rear seat.

Child Safety

Child Safety Seat








E68920

Secure children that weigh between 29 and 40 pounds (13 and 18 kilograms) in a child safety seat (Group 1) on the rear seat.

Booster Seats

WARNINGS

-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the safety belt.
-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a safety belt that is slack or twisted.
-  Do not put the safety belt under your child's arm or behind their back.
-  Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.
-  Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

Note: Make sure the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 125).

Note: When using a child seat on a rear seat, adjust both seating rows in a position to prevent contact with the rear passenger, child feet or child legs.

Booster Seat (Group 2)



E70710

Secure children that weigh more than 33 pounds (15 kilograms) but are less than 59 inches (150 centimeters) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult safety belt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Child Safety

Booster Cushion (Group 3)



E68924

ISOFIX and iSize Anchor Points

WARNING



Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

Note: When you are purchasing an ISOFIX seat, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Seat Positioning** (page 21).



E174928

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child seats.

The ISOFIX system comprises two rigid attachment arms on the child seat that attach to anchor points on the outboard rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points are located behind the outboard rear seats for child seats with a top tether.

Attaching a Child Seat with Top Tethers

WARNINGS



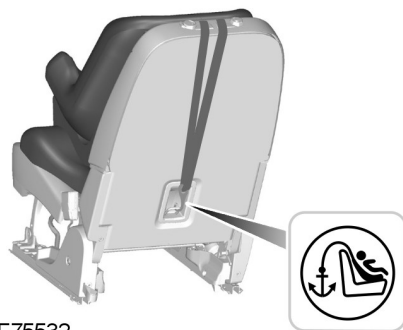
Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a top tether.

Top Tether Anchor Points





E75532

The top tether anchor points are located at the rear of the second row seat backrest.

Child Safety

Attaching a Child Seat With a Support Leg

WARNINGS

-  Make sure the support leg is long enough to reach the vehicle floor.
-  Make sure that the child seat manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child seat.







Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a support leg.



E185352

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

WARNINGS

-  See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.
-  Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.
-  When using a child seat with a support leg, the support leg must rest securely on the floor.
-  When using a child seat with a safety belt, make sure that the safety belt is not slack or twisted.
-  The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It must not touch the head restraint. If necessary remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 125).
-  You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child seat. See **Head Restraints** (page 125).

Child Safety

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 22 lbs (10 kg)	Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)	20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	33 - 55 lbs (15 - 25 kg)	46 - 79 lbs (22 - 36 kg)
	Baby safety seat		Child safety seat	Booster seat or cushion	
Front passenger seat with airbag ON	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Second row seats	U	U	U	U	U
Third row seats	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ²	UF ²	UF ²

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.

U¹ Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group. We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on the rear seat.

UF¹ Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on the rear seat.

UF² Suitable for universal forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. Groups 2 and 3 booster seats with a backrest might be limited in the height adjustment of the back. See the child seat owner manual.

Note: When using a child seat on a front seat, the following longitudinal seat positioning guideline should be followed: The child seat must not be in contact with the instrument panel. The passenger seat should be positioned as far rearward as possible by having a seat belt routing (from B-Pillar ring to child seat) in a forward direction. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the safety belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See **Seats** (page 125).

Note: When using a child seat on a rear seat, adjust the seat in front of it in a position to prevent contact with the rear passenger, child feet or child legs. Make sure the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary adjust the seatback to an upright position. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 125).

Child Safety

ISOFIX Child Seats

Seating positions		Mass group categories		
		0	0+	1
		Rear facing		Forward facing
		Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)		Rear facing
Front passenger seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped		
	Seat type			
Second row seat ISOFIX	Size class	C, D, E ¹	A, B, B1 ¹	C, D ¹
	Seat type	IL ²	IL ² , IUF ³	IL ²
Third row seats	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped		
	Seat type			

IL Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the semi-universal category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.

IUF Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

¹The ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child seat systems is defined by the capital letters A to G. These identification letters are displayed on the ISOFIX child seat.

²At time of publishing the recommended Group 0+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Romer Baby Safe. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.

³At time of publishing the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Romer Duo. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.

Child Safety

I-Size Child Seats

-	Front passenger seat	Rear outboard seats	Rear center seat
I-Size child restraint systems	X	I-U	X

I-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing I-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with I-Size child restraint systems.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

Electric Child Safety Locks



E195228

Press the switch to turn them on.

Press the switch again to turn them off.

Note: *You cannot use the rear power window switches with the child safety locks on.*

Safety Belts

FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

WARNINGS



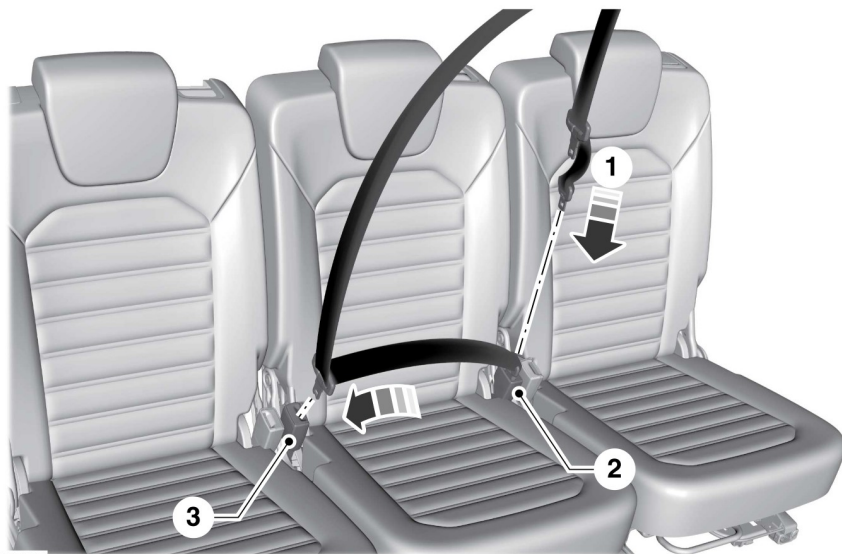
You have not fastened the safety belt correctly if you do not hear a distinct click. Failure to fasten the safety belt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



Make sure that your safety belt is securely stored away and is not outside your vehicle when closing the door. Failure of an occupant to be able to use a trapped safety belt increases the risk of serious personal injury or death.



E74124



E194532

The retractor for the rear center seat belt is located in the roof.

To fasten the seat belt:

1. Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

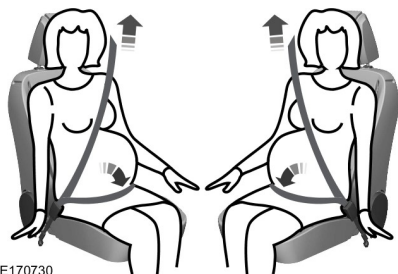
Safety Belts

2. Insert the smaller tongue into the black buckle to the left of the center seat.
3. Pull the larger tongue across the lap and insert it into the buckle to the right of the center seat.

Note: *If in constant use, you can leave the belt buckled in the black buckle. When it is not in use, or when you fold or move the rear seats, you should release the belt from the black buckle.*

Note: *The rear outer safety belts can lock if you return the seatback from a folded position to the upright position forcefully. Should the safety belt lock, recline the seat using the recline adjustment. See **Rear Seats** (page 131).*

Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy



E170730

WARNING



Position the safety belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap. Failure to adjust the safety belt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

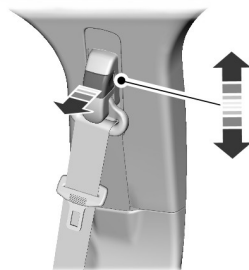
SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING



Position the safety belt height adjuster so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.



E145664

To adjust the shoulder belt height:

1. Pull the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SAFETY BELT MINDER

WARNING



The system will only provide protection when you use the safety belt correctly.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front safety belts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate when a front safety belt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your safety belt both the audible and visual warnings will switch off automatically after approximately five minutes.

Switching the Safety Belt Minder Off

See an authorized dealer.

Rear Safety Belt Minder

WARNING



If multiple belts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one audible chime will sound.

Note: Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to confirm the message.


The following status updates will be shown in the display:


- Tick symbol: Fastened safety belt.
- Exclamation mark: A safety belt that has been unfastened when your vehicle is moving. You will also hear an audible chime.


Supplementary Restraints System


PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION


WARNINGS


 Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.


 Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Wear a safety belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the safety belt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 125). Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and safety belts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death.

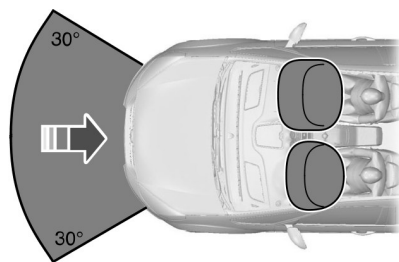
 Do not puncture the seat with sharp objects. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Note: You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

Note: Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

DRIVER AIRBAG

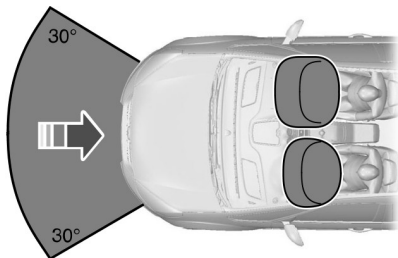


E74302

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

Supplementary Restraints System

PASSENGER AIRBAG



E74302

The airbag will deploy during a significant frontal crash or crashes that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal crashes, sideways crashes, rear crashes or overturns, the airbag will not deploy.

Switching the Passenger Airbag Off

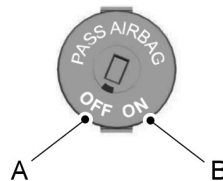
WARNING



You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



E71313



E71312

A Switch off

B Switch on

Turn the switch to position A.

PASS AIRBAG OFF

E157152

When you switch the ignition on, check that the airbag deactivation warning lamp illuminates.

Note: The key switch is located on the end of the instrument panel on the passenger side with the airbag deactivation warning lamp in the center console.

Supplementary Restraints System

Switching the Passenger Airbag On

WARNING



You must switch the passenger airbag on when you are not using a rearward child seat on the front passenger seat. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Turn the switch to position B.

When you switch the ignition on, check that the airbag deactivation warning lamp does not illuminate.

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNING



Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.



E72658

The airbags are located inside the seatback of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seatback to indicate this.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It might also deploy during significant frontal collisions. The airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

WARNING



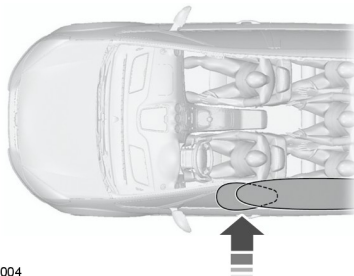
Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

For item location: See **Instrument Panel Overview** (page 16).

Note: The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



E75004

Supplementary Restraints System

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It will also deploy during significant frontal angled collisions. The curtain airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

Keys and Remote Controls

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 ft (10 m).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOTE CONTROL

Remote Flip Key (If Equipped)

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The transmitter portion functions as the remote control.



E186181

Press the button to release the key. Press and hold the button to fold the key back in when not in use.



E151795

Note: *Your vehicle's keys came with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.*

Passive Key (If Equipped)



E186183

Your passive key operates the power locks. The key must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.

Keys and Remote Controls

Removable Key Blade

The passive key also contains a removable mechanical key blade that you can use to unlock the driver door.



E151796

Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off to access the key blade.



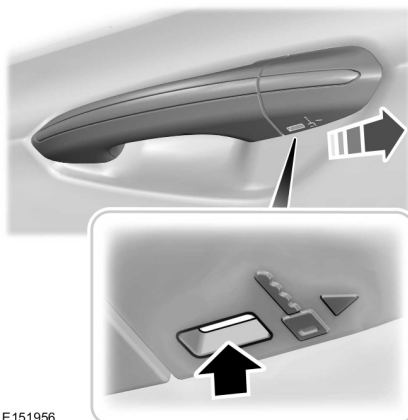
E151795

Note: Your vehicle's backup keys came with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.

Using the Key Blade

The key cylinder is under a cap on the driver door handle.

To remove the cap:



E151956

1. Insert the key blade into the slot on the bottom of the handle and press up.
2. While maintaining upward pressure, move the cap rearward to release it. Gently remove the key while doing so.

To install the cap:



E151957

1. Place the cap just rearward of the key cylinder.
2. While applying pressure to the cap, move it forward until it is in place. You may hear a snap as it engages.

Make sure you have properly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

Keys and Remote Controls

Changing the Remote Control Battery

Note: Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: You do not need to reprogram the remote control after you have replaced its battery, it should operate normally.

A message will appear in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

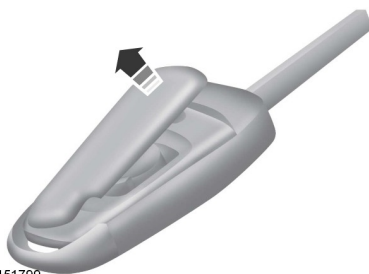
Remote Flip Key

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

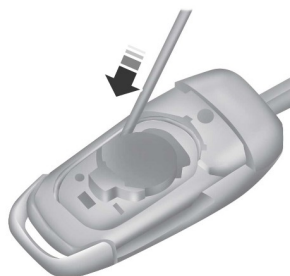
Press the button to release the key before beginning the procedure.



1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.

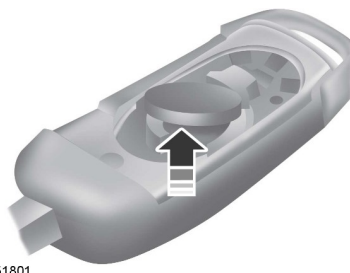


3. Carefully remove the cover.



Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

4. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.



5. Remove the battery.

Keys and Remote Controls

6. Install a new battery with the **+** facing upward.
7. Replace the battery cover.

Passive Key

The remote control uses two coin-type three-volt lithium batteries CR2025 or equivalent.



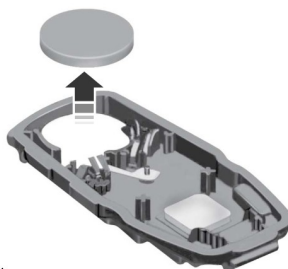
E151796

1. Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off.



E153890

2. Insert a coin into the slot and twist to separate the housing.



E153891

3. Remove the batteries.
4. Install new batteries with the **+** facing each other.

Note: Make sure to replace the label between the two batteries.

5. Reinstall the housing and cover.

Memory Feature

If programmed to a pre-set position, the remote flip key or passive key recalls the driver seat and exterior mirror positions when you unlock your vehicle. It also recalls the power steering column and pedal positions. See **Memory Function** (page 129).

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 51).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that remain unprogrammed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. They can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information by using the information display to determine:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle traveled with a MyKey.

Note: *Switch the vehicle on to use the system.*

Note: *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

Note: *For vehicles equipped with push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin remote transmitter are present, the admin remote transmitter will be recognized by the vehicle while switching the vehicle on to start the vehicle.*

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Safety belt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat passengers' safety belts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel or charge. The low-fuel or low charge warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel or recharge.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid and Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) with cross traffic alert.

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

WARNING



Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to switch off Advance Trac or traction control, Emergency Assist, parking aid, lane keeping alert or the do not disturb feature (if your vehicle is equipped with these features).

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the intelligent access transmitter into the backup position. The location of your backup position is in another chapter. See **Starting a Gasoline Engine** (page 144).
2. Switch the vehicle on.
3. Access the main menu through the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the OK button or the right arrow key.
Create MyKey	Press the OK button or the right arrow key.

When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings by doing the following:

1. Switch the vehicle on using an admin key.
2. Use the arrow buttons to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button or the right arrow button.
MyKey	Press the OK button or the right arrow button.

Note: You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.

Note: When you make any changes to your MyKey settings, you change the settings for every MyKey. You cannot make individual changes to apply to certain MyKeys.

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the OK button until the following message displays.
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

To find information on programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
MyKey	Press the OK button.
Select one of the following:	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non

Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges.• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key).• Vehicles with keyless start: The keyless start transmitter is not placed in the backup position. See Starting a Gasoline Engine (page 144).• SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.
I cannot program the configurable settings.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges.• No MyKeys are created. See Creating a MyKey (page 38).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges.• No MyKeys are created. See Creating a MyKey (page 38).
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.

MyKey™

Condition	Potential Causes
I lost a key.	Program a spare key. See Passive Anti-Theft System (page 51).
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The MyKey user is not using the MyKey.• An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys.• The key system has been reset.
No MyKey functions with the keyless entry transmitter.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start.• No MyKeys are created. See Creating a MyKey (page 38).

Locks

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

Note: Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

Note: Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E138628

A Unlock.

B Lock.

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on each door window trim illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch will no longer operate after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time when the ignition is off.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Note: The driver door can be unlocked with the key if the remote control is not functioning.

Note: When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, the remote control turns off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once enables the remote control.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 33).

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Note: If any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the direction indicators will not flash.

Double Locking the Doors

WARNING



Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. It will only operate if all of the doors are fully closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Locks

Automatic Relocking

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

Use the power door lock control located on the driver and front passenger door panels.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

Locking with the Key Blade

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Double Locking with the Key Blade

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.

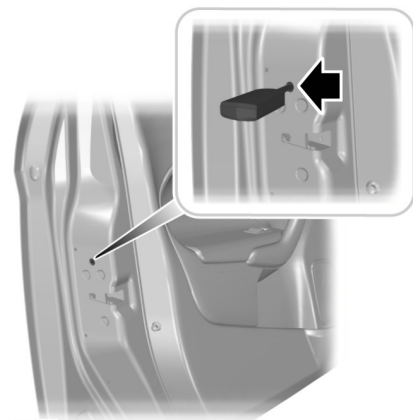
Unlocking with the Key Blade

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior door handle, you will only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the exterior door handle.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key Blade

Locking



If the central locking function fails to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Unlocking

If the central locking function fails to operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

Locks

MANUAL LIFTGATE

WARNINGS



It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

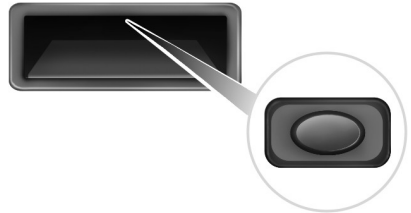
Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Opening the Liftgate

Manually



E138632

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Closing the Liftgate



E155976

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

POWER LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a safety belt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving the vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. You could damage the liftgate or its components.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the spoiler, glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

The liftgate only operates with the transmission in park (P).

One warning tone sounds as the liftgate begins to power close. Three short chimes indicate a problem with the open or close request, caused by:

- The ignition is on and the transmission is not in park (P).
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- The vehicle speed is at or above 3 mph (5 km/h).

If the liftgate starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the liftgate or a possible gas strut failure. A repetitive chime sounds and the liftgate closes under control. Remove any excessive weight from the liftgate. If the liftgate continues to close after opening, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

WARNING



Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

From the Instrument Panel



Press the button on the instrument panel.

With the Remote Control



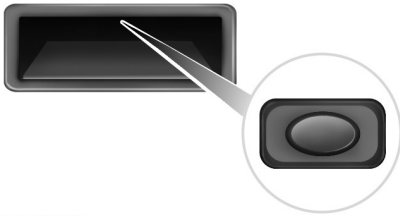
Press the button twice within three seconds.

Locks

With the Outside Control Button

Opening the Liftgate

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If a passive key is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



E138632

2. Press the control button located in the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

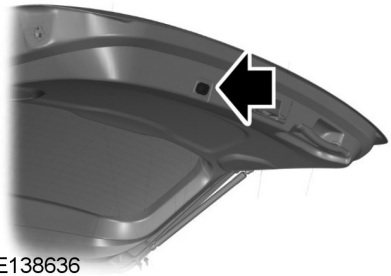
Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction. Manually interfering with the liftgate motion may also replicate a gas strut failure.

Closing the Liftgate

WARNING



Keep clear of the liftgate when activating the rear switch.



E138636

Press and release the button.

Stopping the Liftgate Movement

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the instrument panel.
- Pressing the exterior liftgate release button.
- Activating the obstacle detection feature.

Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Note: Once the liftgate has stopped moving, you can also manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the liftgate control button on the liftgate until you hear a chime, indicating programming is complete.

Note: You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

Locks

Note: You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

The new open liftgate height is recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once you open the power liftgate, you can manually move it to a different height.

Note: The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

When operating the power liftgate after you have programmed a lower height than full-open, you can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position.

Obstacle Detection

When Closing

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. Two short tones sound and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

Note: Entering your vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause your vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the liftgate open while driving.

When Opening

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and two short tones sound. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

KEYLESS ENTRY

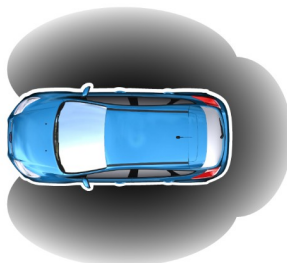
General Information

The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery has no charge.

Note: If the system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

The system allows you to operate your vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately 3.3 ft (1 m) from the front door handles and the liftgate.

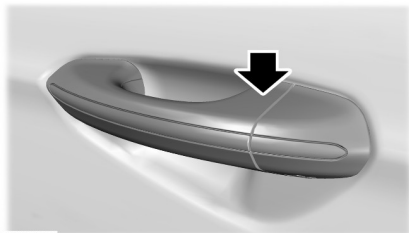
Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Passive Key

Your vehicle can be locked and unlocked with the passive key. You can use the passive key as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 43).

Locks

Locking Your Vehicle



E157085

Locking sensors are located on each of the front doors.

For central locking and to arm the alarm, touch a locking sensor once.

For double locking and to arm the alarm, touch a locking sensor twice within three seconds.

Note: Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a locking sensor your vehicle will remain unlocked.

Note: When locking your vehicle, do not grip the door handle.

Note: Keep the door handle surface clean to make sure the system operates correctly.

Note: Your vehicle will remain locked for approximately three seconds. When the delay period is over, you can open the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the liftgate have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

Liftgate

Note: The liftgate cannot be closed and will reopen if the passive key is located inside the luggage compartment with the doors locked.

Note: If a second valid passive key is located within the liftgate detection range, the liftgate can be closed.

Unlocking Your Vehicle

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the liftgate have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

Note: When your vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to prevent the vehicle battery running out of charge. When your vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. To exit the energy-saving mode, unlock your vehicle.

Note: A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

Unlocking Only the Driver Door

You can program the system so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 33).

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver door is unlocked the following will occur:

- If the driver door is the first door opened, all the other doors will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button. The other doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handle on the respective door.
- If the front passenger door is the first door opened, all the doors will be unlocked.

Disabled Passive Keys

Any keys left inside your vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

Locks

You cannot use a disabled key to switch the ignition on or start the engine.

You must enable all passive keys again in order to use them.

To enable all your passive keys, unlock your vehicle using a passive key that has not been disabled or the remote control unlocking function.

All passive keys will then be enabled if you switch the ignition on or you start your vehicle with a valid key.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade



E151796

Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off to access the key blade. See **Remote Control** (page 33).

Note: Only the driver door handle has a lock cylinder.

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *Do not leave correctly coded keys in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.*

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound and the hazard warning flasher will flash.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 43).

Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles With Keyless Entry

Note: *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 48).*

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR SENSOR

Alarm System

WARNING



Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

Note: Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement inside your vehicle.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio unit or navigation system.

- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Security

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Alarm	Press the OK button.
Ask on exit	Press the OK button.
Reduced guard	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the OK button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the OK button.

Note: Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 43).

Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles with Keyless Entry

Note: A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 48).

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY

Alarm System

WARNING



Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

Note: Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.

Security

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system, which sounds a siren if your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the OK button.
Vehicle settings	Press the OK button.
Alarm	Press the OK button.
Ask on exit	Press the OK button.
Reduced	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above sounds the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Security

Message	Action and Description
	If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the OK button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the OK button.

Note: *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 43).

Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles with Keyless Entry

Note: *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 48).*

Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL ADJUSTABLE STEERING COLUMN

WARNING



Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 125).



E191039

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E191047

3. Lock the steering column.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: POWER ADJUSTABLE STEERING COLUMN

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 125).

WARNING



Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.



E161834

Use the control on the side of the steering column to adjust the position.

To adjust:

- Tilt: Press the top or bottom of the control.
- Telescope: Press the front or rear of the control.

Steering Wheel

End of Travel Position

The steering column sets a stopping position just short of the end of the column position to prevent damage to the steering column. A new stopping position sets if the steering column encounters an object when tilting or telescoping.

To reset the steering column to its normal stopping position:

1. Confirm there is nothing obstructing the motion of the steering column.
2. Press and hold the steering column control until the steering column stops moving.
3. Press the steering column control again. The steering column may begin to move again.
4. When the steering column stops, continue holding the control for an additional few seconds.
5. Repeat for each direction as necessary.

A new stopping position is set. The next time you tilt or telescope the steering column, it will stop just short of the end of the column position.

Memory Feature

You can save and recall the steering column position with the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 129).

Note: *Pressing the adjustment control during memory recall cancels the operation.*

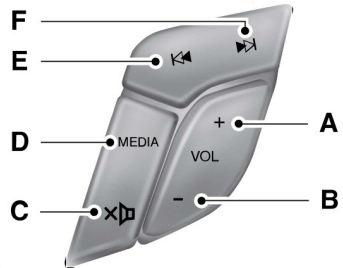
Easy Entry and Exit Feature

When you switch the ignition off, the steering column will move to allow extra room to exit your vehicle. The column will return to the previous setting when you switch the ignition on. You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

Operate the following functions with the control:



E168191

- A Volume up.
- B Volume down.
- C Mute.
- D Media.
- E Seek down or previous.
- F Seek up or next.

MEDIA

Press repeatedly to scroll through available audio sources.

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

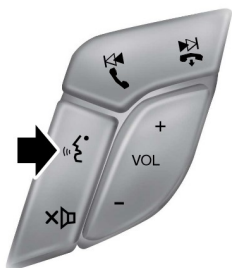
- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- seek through a track.

Steering Wheel

VOICE CONTROL (If Equipped)



E168194

Press the button to select or deselect voice control. See **SYNC™ 2** (page 344).

Type 2

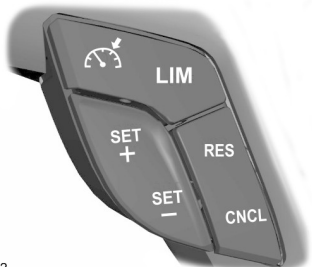


E191233

See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page190). See **Speed Limiter** (page196).

CRUISE CONTROL

Type 1



E191232

See **Using Cruise Control** (page189). See **Speed Limiter** (page 196).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E144636

See **Information Displays** (page 87).

Steering Wheel

Information Display Control Features



E144811

This control functions the same as the center control on the faceplate. See **Audio Unit** (page 295).

Use this control to adjust the right side of the information display. Navigate through the screen and press **OK** to select.

HEATED STEERING WHEEL (If Equipped)

See **SYNC™ 2** (page 344).

Wipers and Washers

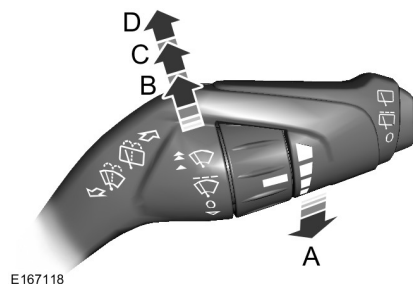
WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure you switch the windshield wipers and vehicle power off before using an automatic car wash.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 251). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 252).

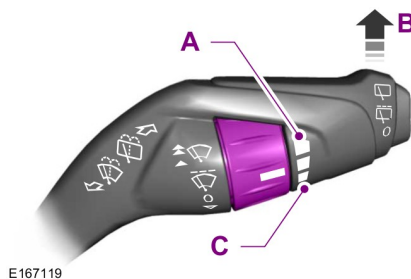
Note: Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.



- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

Note: Move to position **O** marked on the wiper lever to switch off.

Intermittent Wipe



- A Short-wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long-wipe interval.

Push the wiper lever up to switch the wipers on, and then use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers (If Equipped)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

AUTOWIPERS (If Equipped)

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure you switch the windshield wipers and ignition off before using an automatic car wash.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

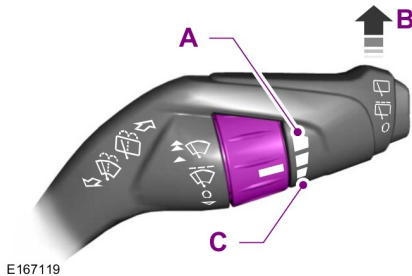
Note: If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

Wipers and Washers

Note: During wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or a salty road mist, inconsistent or unexpected wiping or smearing may occur.

In these conditions, you can do the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch autowipers off.



- A High sensitivity
- B On
- C Low sensitivity

Note: Some autowiper levers may include a letter "A" within the icon.

Autowipers uses a rain sensor located in the area around the interior mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically turns the wipers on. It will adjust the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.



To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you.

A wipe will occur a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid. This feature can be switched on or off in the information display. See (page 87).

Front Camera Washer (If Equipped)

Operating the windshield washer will also operate the front camera washer.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Rear Window Wiper

Note: Make sure you switch the rear window wiper and ignition off before using an automatic car wash.

Wipers and Washers

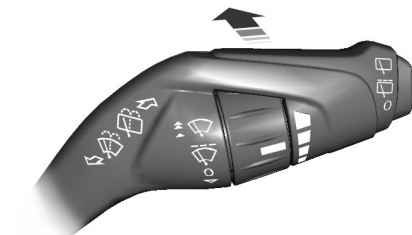


- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Low speed wipe.
- C Off.

Press the top of the button to switch intermittent wipe on. Press the top of the button again to switch low speed wipe on. Press the bottom of the button to switch the rear window wiper off.

When you switch on the front wipers and move the gearshift lever to reverse (R), rear intermittent wipe automatically turns on.

Rear Window Washer



Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, wiping continues for a short period of time.

HEADLAMP WASHERS

When the headlamps are on, the headlamp washers will operate with the windshield washers.

Note: *The headlamp washers will not operate every time you use the windshield washers. This is to prevent the washer fluid reservoir from emptying quickly.*

Lighting

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

- A Off
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
- C Headlamps

High Beams



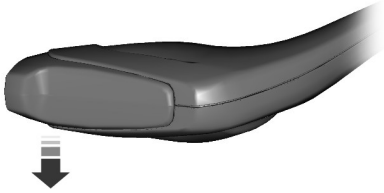
E162679

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Lighting

Headlamp Flasher



E162680

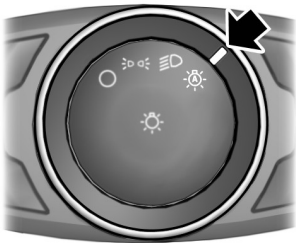
Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS (If Equipped)

WARNING



The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a collision.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers activate.

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.
- Automatic high beam control.
- Adaptive headlamp control.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

Note: *With the headlamps in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the autolamps system turns the low beam headlamps on.*

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

The windshield wiper activated headlamps turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on and the lighting control is in the autolamps position. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps will not turn on by wiper activation:

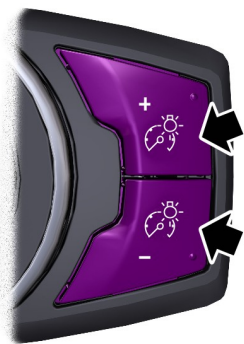
- During a mist wipe.
- When the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

Note: You disable the manual dimmer when you adjust the setting to Auto Dimming in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

Note: If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.



E161902


Press repeatedly or press and hold until you reach the desired level.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING


 Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.


To switch the system on:


1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.


AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL


WARNINGS

 The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. A manual override may be necessary if the system fails to switch the high beam on or off.

 A manual override may be required when approaching other road users such as cyclists.

 Do not use the system in fog.

 In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. A manual override may be necessary in these cases.

 The system may not deactivate the high beam if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles (for example guard rails).

Lighting

WARNINGS



Check and replace wiper blades regularly to ensure the camera sensor has a clear view through the windscreen. Replacement wiper blades must be the correct length.

Note: Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

Note: Reflective road signs may be detected as oncoming traffic and the headlamps will be switched to low beam.

Note: Always fit Ford Original Parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

The system will automatically switch on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead the system will switch off high beam before it can distract other road users. Low beam will remain on.

A camera sensor is centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle. This monitors conditions continuously to decide when to switch the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active the high beam will switch on if:

- It is dark enough to require the use of high beams and
- there is no traffic or street lighting ahead and
- vehicle speed is greater than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

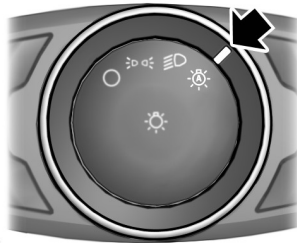
The high beam will switch off if:

- The ambient light is high enough that high beam is not required.
- An approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps are detected.
- Street lighting is detected.

- Vehicle speed falls below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The camera sensor is too hot or becomes blocked.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.

Activating the System

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 87). Turn the switch to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 64).



E142451

The indicator will illuminate to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Manually Overriding the System



E169254

Push or pull the lever to switch between high and low beam.

Note: This is a temporary override and the system will return to automatic operation after a short period.

Lighting

To permanently switch the system off, use the information display menu or turn the lighting control switch to the headlamps position.

FRONT FOG LAMPS



E132709

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

Note: Only use fog lamps during reduced visibility, for example, fog, snow or heavy rain.

Note: If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

REAR FOG LAMPS



E132710

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

Note: Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is less than 164 feet (50 meters).

Note: Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing.

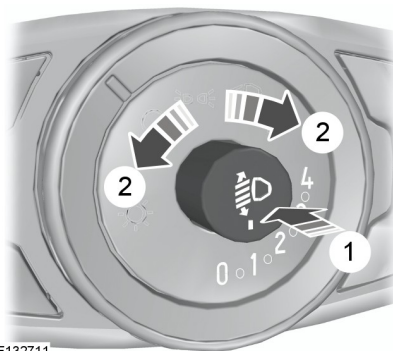
Note: If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

HEADLAMP LEVELING

Adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to your vehicle load.

Set the headlamp leveling control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded. Set the headlamp beams to give between 115–328 ft (35–100 m) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams:



E132711

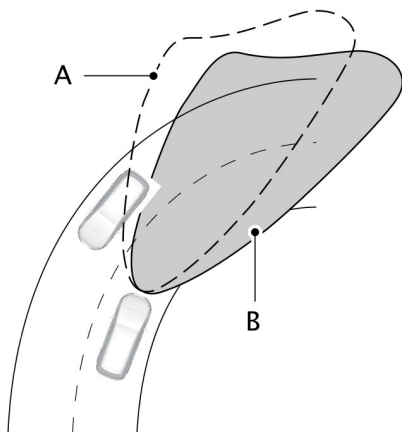
1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control to the required setting.

3. Press to close the control.

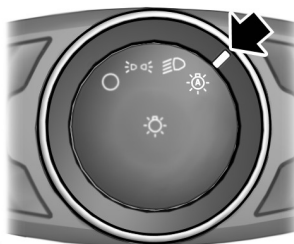
ADAPTIVE HEADLAMPS

The headlamp beams move in the same direction as the steering wheel. This provides more visibility when driving around curves.

- A. Without adaptive headlamps
- B. With adaptive headlamps



The system will only work with the lighting control switch in the autolamp position.



E142451

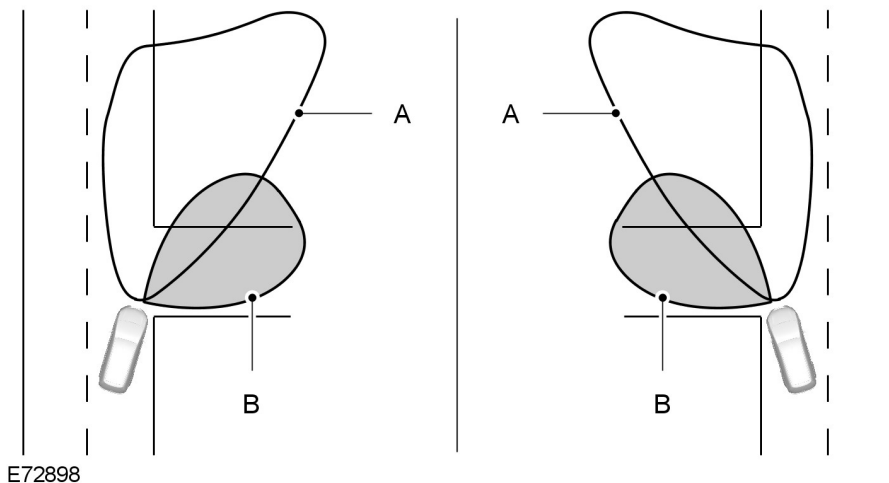
Note: There may be a delay of up to five seconds before the system will operate when the vehicle is first driven.

Note: The system is only active at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h).

When the vehicle is started, the lamps track to a predetermined position, then back to center to alert the driver that the system is working properly.

E161714

CORNERING LAMPS



- A Headlamp beam
- B Cornering lamp beam

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Lighting

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps will turn on when you have met one of the following conditions:

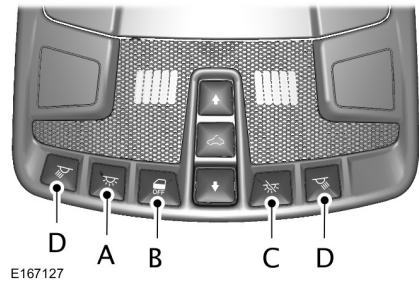
- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press the all lamps on button on the front interior lamp.

Front Interior Lamp

Note: The front interior lamp buttons are on the overhead console. The exact location of each button on the overhead console depends upon which roof, moonroof, and window shade features are equipped on the vehicle.

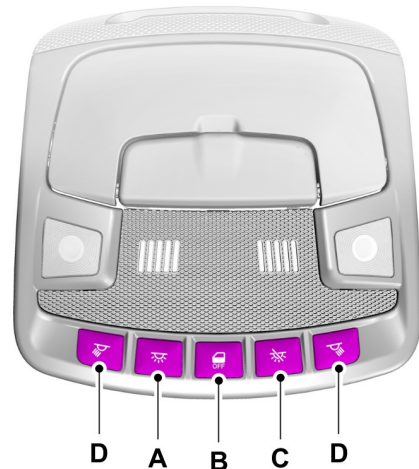
Note: Press the button to switch the door function off when you open any door. The indicator lamp will light amber when the door function is off. When the door function is off and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps will stay off. Press the button again to switch the door function back on. The indicator lamp will light blue when the door function is on. When the door function is on and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps will light.

Type 1



- A All lamps on button
- B Door function button
- C All lamps off button
- D Individual dome lamps

Type 2

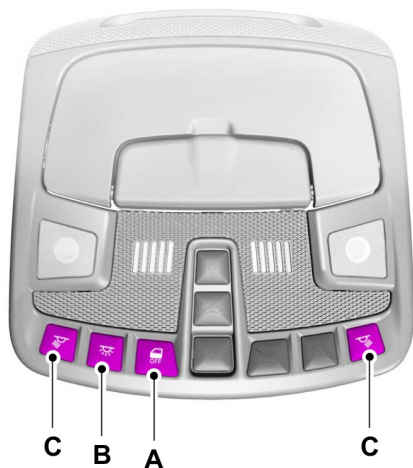


- A All lamps on button
- B Door function button

Lighting

- C All lamps off button
- D Individual dome lamps

Type 3



E199032

- A Door function button
- B All lamps on button
- C Individual dome lamps

You can switch individual map lamps on independently by pressing a map lens.

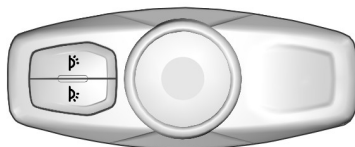
Rear Interior Lamp (If Equipped)

Type 1



E169470

Type 2



E199026

Type 3



E199027

You can switch dome lamps on by pressing the button.

AMBIENT LIGHTING (If Equipped)

The ambient lighting system is adjusted with the touchscreen system. See **SYNC™ 2** (page 344).

Windows and Mirrors

POWER WINDOWS

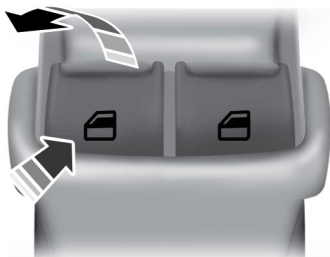
WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E146043

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

Note: You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

One-Touch Down

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up

Lift the control fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Up

1. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.

2. Release the control.
3. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
4. Repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

Window Lock



E195228

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It lights when the rear window controls lock.

Bounce-Back

The window stops automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING



When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within two seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window is fully closed.

Windows and Mirrors

Accessory Delay

You can use the window controls for several minutes after switching off the ignition or until opening either front door.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Note: You can enable or disable this feature in the information display or see an authorized dealer. See (page 87).

Note: To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.

Opening the Windows

You can only open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows and vent the moonroof. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

Closing the Windows

WARNING



When closing the windows and moonroof, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

To close the windows and moonroof, press and hold the remote control lock button. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E 195229

- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror.

To adjust a mirror:

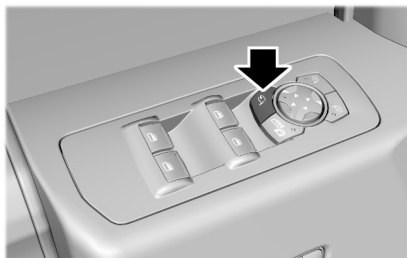
1. Press A or C to select the mirror you want to adjust. The control lights.
2. Press B to adjust the mirror's position.
3. Press the mirror control again. The light turns off.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Windows and Mirrors

Power-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)



E195334

To fold both mirrors, make sure you switch your vehicle on (with the ignition in accessory mode or the engine running) and then:

1. Press the control to fold the mirrors.
2. Press the control again to unfold.

Note: Once you press the control, you cannot stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control again.

Auto-Folding Mirrors

Note: The auto-fold mirrors operate only if they are in an unfolded position. If you folded the mirrors using the power-folding control, then you must unfold the mirrors using the power-folding control so the auto-fold feature can work.

The mirrors fold automatically when you lock the vehicle. The mirrors unfold when you unlock the vehicle.

You can switch this feature on or off using the vehicle settings menu in the information display.

Loose Mirror

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if they:

- Vibrate while driving or feel loose.
- Do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.

To reset the power-fold feature:

1. Use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors.
2. When you hear one or both of the mirrors make a loud noise, it means that you reset the mirrors successfully. This noise is normal.
3. Repeat this process each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Even though the power-folding mirrors typically operate electronically, you can still fold and unfold them manually. After any manual adjustment, however, the power-folding mirrors become unsynchronized, even after repositioning them.

An unsynchronized mirror may:

- Not fold or unfold normally.
- Not stay in its set position.
- Feel loose or even vibrate at normal driving speeds.

You can reset the mirrors by doing the following:

1. Use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors.
2. When you hear one or both of the mirrors make a loud noise, it means that you reset the mirrors successfully. This noise is normal.
3. Repeat this process each time the power-folding mirrors fold or unfold manually.

Windows and Mirrors

Reverse Mirror Dipping

One of your exterior mirrors automatically dips down when you place your vehicle into reverse (R). This feature gives you a view of the curb.

To use, do the following:

1. Select a mirror using the power mirror control.
2. When you place your vehicle into reverse (R), the mirror automatically dips.

The exterior mirror automatically returns to its original position when:

- Your vehicle speed exceeds 5 mph (10 km/h).
- Your vehicle is no longer in reverse (R).
- You switched the power mirror control off.

The mirror automatically adjusts to a set position, but you can change the position by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Select the mirror you want to re-position.
3. Put your vehicle into reverse (R) and let the mirror automatically dip to its set position.
4. When the mirror is in its dipped position and is no longer moving, re-position it to your preference.
5. Put your vehicle into park (P).
6. Use the memory preset control to save the position. See **Memory Function** (page 129).

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).

Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 129).

Auto-Dimming Feature (If Equipped)

The driver exterior mirror automatically dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.

Direction Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the direction indicator.

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 203).

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

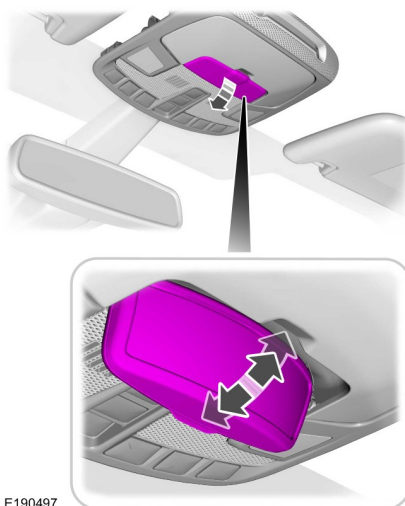
Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

Windows and Mirrors

Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.



E190497

CHILDMINDER MIRROR

On double bin overhead consoles, the conversation mirror allows the driver to view the rear seating area.

WARNING

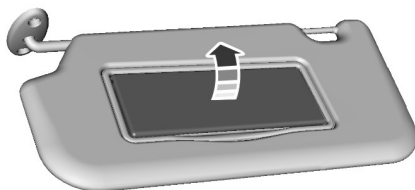


Do not use the childminder mirror to view rearward traffic, do not allow rear passengers to distract you from the driving task, and make sure the rear view mirror has a clear view of rearward traffic. Failure to do so could increase the risk of a crash from an unseen vehicle, which may result in serious injury.

Pull down the rear edge of the childminder mirror to open. You can adjust the childminder mirror to any position up to full open to aid in visibility.

SUN VISORS

Illuminated Vanity Mirror



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

Windows and Mirrors

SUN SHADES - VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF PANEL

WARNINGS



Do not let children play with the sun shade or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

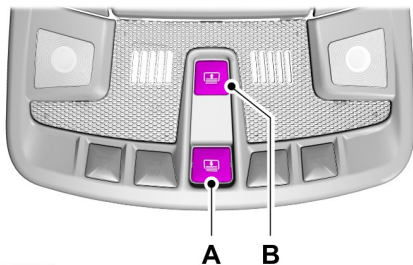


When closing the sun shade, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the sunshade.

The controls are located in the overhead console.

The sun shade has a one-touch open and close feature. To stop motion during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Opening and Closing the Sun Shade



E193749

- A **Sunshade open.** Press and release to open the sun shade.
- B **Sunshade close.** Press and release to close the sun shade.

Bounce-Back

The sun shade will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Sun Shade Relearning

WARNING



The bounce-back function is not active during this procedure. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the way of the moving sun shade.

Note: You must start the relearning process within 30 seconds of switching the ignition on.

In case the sun shade no longer opens or closes properly, follow this relearning procedure:

1. Press the **sunshade open** control to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
2. Press the **sunshade close** control to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
3. Press and hold the **sunshade open** control to the first action point, until the sun shade fully opens.
4. Press and hold the **sunshade close** control to the first action point, until the sun shade fully closes.

If you do not complete Step 2 within 15 seconds of Step 1, the relearning function ends. Switch the ignition off, wait for another 30 seconds and then switch the ignition back on again. Start the procedure again from the beginning.

Confirm that relearning was successful by opening and closing the sun shade.

Windows and Mirrors

MOONROOF - VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL

WARNINGS



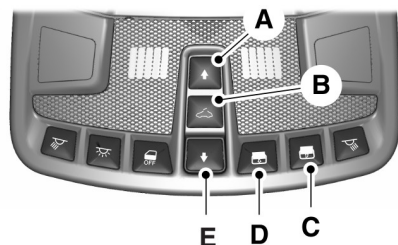
Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.



When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof controls are located on the overhead console and have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop its movement during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Opening and Closing the Moonroof



E191272

- A **Moonroof open.** Press and release to open the moonroof. The moonroof stops short of the fully opened position. Press and release the control again to open the moonroof fully.
- B **Moonroof vent.** Press and release to vent the moonroof.

- C **Sunshade open.** Press and release to open the sunshade. The sunshade opens automatically with the moonroof. You can also open the sunshade with the moonroof closed. **Note:** The sunshade stops short of its fully opened position for the comfort of rear passengers. To open the sunshade fully, press the control again.
- D **Sunshade close.** Press and release to close the sunshade. If fully open, the sunshade stops after covering the rear glass panel. Press and release again to fully close the sunshade.
- E **Moonroof close.** Press and release to close the moonroof from either the open or vent positions.

Bounce-Back

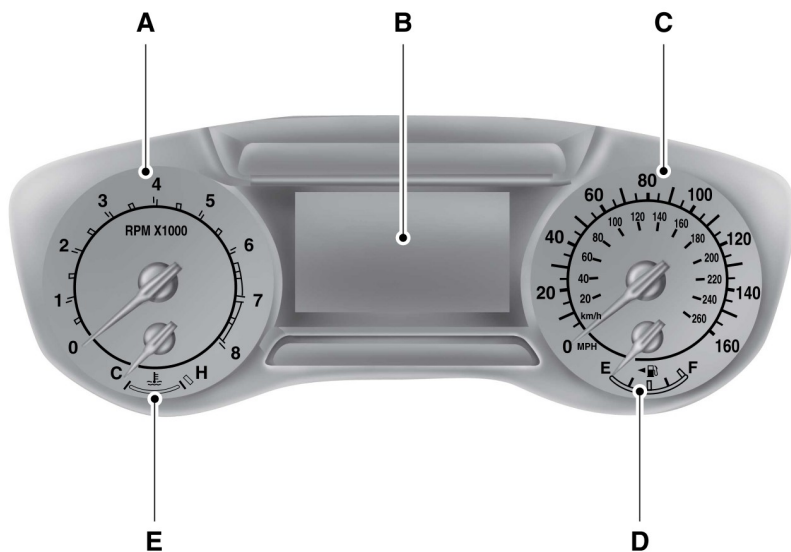
The moonroof automatically reverses some distance if an obstacle is detected while closing.

To override this feature, press and hold the **moonroof close** control within two seconds after the roof comes to a stop following a bounce-back reversal.

Instrument Cluster

GAUGES

Type 1 and 2

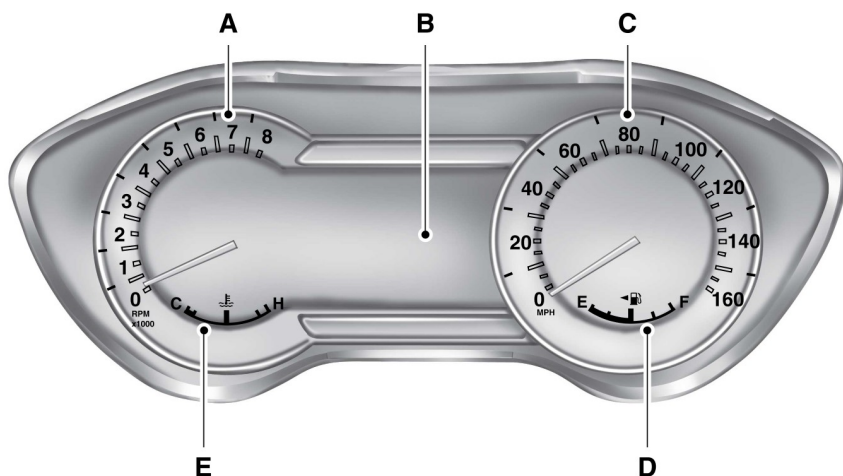


E144485

- A Tachometer
- B Information Display
- C Speedometer
- D Fuel Gauge
- E Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Instrument Cluster

Type 3



E152749

- A Tachometer
- B Information Display
- C Speedometer
- D Fuel Gauge
- E Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Information Display

Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Compass

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

Trip Computer

See **General Information** (page 87).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 87).

Instrument Cluster

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the needle remains in the center section. If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down.

Note: *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.*

WARNING



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Fuel Gauge

Note: *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Variations:

Driving type (fuel economy conditions)	Fuel gauge position	Distance-to-empty
Highway driving	1/16th	35 miles to 80 miles (56 km to 129 km)
Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle)	1/16th	35 miles (56km)

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th.

Instrument Cluster

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)



The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in: See **Using Cruise Control** (page 189).

On (white light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is turned on. Turns off when the speed control system is turned off.

Engaged (green light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is engaged. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.

Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Automatic High Beam Lamp (If

Equipped)



Illuminates when this feature is on. See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 65).

Auto Start-stop (If Equipped)



Illuminates to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message.

Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Blind Spot Monitor Indicator (If

Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Information**

System (page 203). See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Brake System Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Instrument Cluster

WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Cruise Control (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch this feature on. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 189).

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burnt out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 254).

Door Ajar



Illuminates when the vehicle is on and any door is not completely closed.

Electric Park Brake



Illuminates when the electric parking brake has a malfunction.

Engine Coolant Temperature



Illuminates when the engine or motor coolant temperature is high. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible and contact your authorized dealer.

Engine Oil Warning Lamp

WARNING



If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 247).

Fasten Safety Belt Warning Lamp



Illuminates and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Safety Belt Minder** (page 28).

Front Airbag Warning Lamp



If the warning lamp does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Front Fog Lamps Indicator (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Frost Warning Lamp

WARNING



Even if the temperature rises to above 39°F (4°C) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.

Instrument Cluster



Illuminates when the outside air temperature is 39°F (4°C) or below.

Fuel Operated Heater Enabled



Illuminates when you switch the fuel operated heater on.

Fuel Operated Heater Operating



Illuminates to inform you the fuel operated heater is currently in operation.

Glow Plug Indicator



With the key in the on position, illuminates when the glow plug heat is necessary as a starting aid. Wait until the light goes off before starting.

After you start the engine, the light should turn off. When the engine is cold, the light should always light for a short period.

Heads Up Display (If Equipped)



A red beam of lights will illuminate on the windshield in certain instances when using adaptive cruise control or the pre-collision warning system. It will also light momentarily when you start your vehicle to make sure the display works.

High Beam Indicator



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Hill Start Assist Indicator



Illuminates when the system is not available.

Hood Ajar



Illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Lane Keeping Aid (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you activate the lane keeping system.

Liftgate Ajar



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Low Beam Malfunction



Illuminates when there is a malfunction with the low beam headlamp bulb.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tyre Pressure Warning



Illuminates when your tyre pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tyre pressure as soon as possible.

It will also light momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not light when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Instrument Cluster

Low Washer Fluid



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Headlamp and Parking Lamp Indicator



Illuminates when you switch the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Powertrain Fault



Illuminates when a powertrain or an all-wheel drive fault has been detected. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Rear Fog Lamps Indicator



Illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Service Engine Soon



If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On board diagnostics (OBD) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced.

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

WARNING



Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

Shift Indicator



Illuminates to inform you that shifting to a higher or lower gear as indicated may give better fuel economy and lower CO₂



emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.

Speed Limiter



Illuminates when you switch on the speed limiter system. Flashes when you exceed the set speed limit. See **Speed Limiter** (page 196).

Stability Control Off Indicator



Illuminates when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 175).

Instrument Cluster

Stability Control Warning Lamp



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 175).

Traffic Sign Recognition No Passing



Illuminates when a no passing sign is detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Limit



Illuminates when the current speed limit is detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

If the traffic sign speed warning is enabled, the light flashes when you have exceeded the speed limit detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

Water-In-Fuel (If Equipped)



Illuminates when there is excess water in the fuel filter. Drain off the water immediately. See

Fuel Quality (page 153).

Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key, after the last door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition.

Information Displays

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

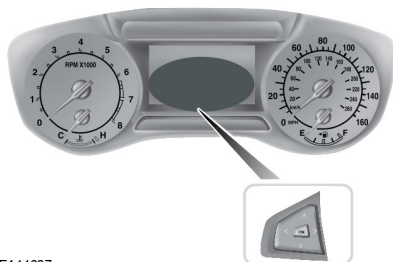


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Your vehicle may or may not be equipped with all the messages listed in this chapter. Your vehicle does not display messages of systems it is not equipped with.*

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

Information Display Controls (Type 1 and 2)



E1444637

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the OK button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu

You can access the menu using the information display control.



This icon gives you the ability to switch a feature on or off. A check in the box indicates the feature is enabled, and unchecked indicates the feature is disabled.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Information Displays

Trip computer 1	
Trip computer 2	
Speed	Shows a digital display of your vehicle speed.
Dist to empty	Shows the approximate distance your vehicle can travel before running out of fuel.
Trip odometer	Registers the distance of individual journeys.
Trip timer	The timer stops when you turn your vehicle off and restarts when you restart your vehicle.
Fuel used	Shows the amount of fuel used for a given trip.
Average fuel	Shows the average fuel economy for a given trip.
Outside temp	Shows the outside air temperature.
All values	Dist to empty
	Trip odometer
	Trip timer
	Average fuel

Note: Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and fuel information.

Fuel economy	
Dist to empty	Shows the approximate distance your vehicle can travel before running out of fuel.
Instant fuel	Shows a graph of your instantaneous fuel economy along with your average fuel economy since the function was last reset.
Average fuel	Shows your average fuel economy.
Fuel history	Shows a bar chart of your fuel history.

Information Displays

Fuel economy	
Average speed	Shows your average speed since the function was last reset.
All values	Dist to empty
	Instant fuel
	Average fuel
	Average speed
Auto StartStop	Available Auto Start-Stop messaging provides details about what is happening with your system. See Information Messages (page 96).

Note: You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the OK button on the left-hand steering wheel controls.

Driver assist		
Traction control		
BLIS		
Cross traffic alrt		
Cruise control	Select setting	
Driver alert		
Select. susp.		
Hill start assist		
Intelligent AWD		
Lane keeping	Mode	Select setting
	Intensity	
Pre-collision	Alert sensitivity	
	Dist. indication	
	Active braking	
Speed limiter	Manual	

Information Displays

Driver assist		
	Intelligent	
	Tolerance	
Traffic signs	On	
	Speed minder	Speed warning tolerance
		Chime
Tyre monitor	Tyre pressure	
Trailer control		

Tyre pressure
Displays your current vehicle tire pressures.



E194207

Settings		
Vehicle	Alarm system	Select setting
		Ask on exit
	Auto engine off	
	Chimes	Park slot found
		Information
	DTE calculation	Select setting
	Easy entry/exit	

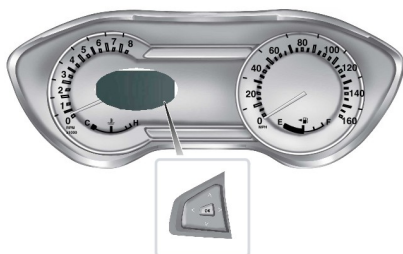
Information Displays

Settings				
	Lighting	Adapt. hdlamp	Adapt. hdlamp	
			Traffic (R/L)	Select setting
		Auto highbeam		
		Hdlamp delay	Select setting	
		Daytime lights		
	Locks	Auto lock		
		Auto unlock		
		Relock		
		Mislock		
		Unlocking	Select setting	
		Switches inhibit		
	Power mirror	Autofold		
		Reverse tilt		
	Oil life reset	Hold OK to reset		
	Park heater	Continue heat		
		Programming	Select setting	
	Park lock control			
	Power liftgate	Select setting		
	Seatbelts			
	Silent mode			
	Windows	Select setting		
	Wipers			
MyKey	Create MyKey	Select setting		
	Emerg. Assist.			
	Do not disturb			
	Traction control			

Information Displays

Settings		
	Max speed	
	Speed minder	
	Volume limit	
	Clear MyKeys	Select setting
Display	Measure unit	Select setting
	Temp unit	
	Tyre pressure	
	Language	

Information Display Controls (Type 3)



E182848

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the OK button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu

You can access the menu using the information display control.

Note: Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

Trip computer	
All Values	Trip timer
	Trip odometer
	Average fuel

Note: You can reset your trip information by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand steering wheel controls.

Information Displays

Fuel economy	
Instant fuel	Shows a graph of your instantaneous fuel economy.
Fuel history	Shows a bar chart of your fuel history.
Average speed	Shows your vehicles average speed since the function was last reset.
Auto StartStop	Available Auto Start-Stop messaging provides details about what is happening with your system. See Information Messages (page 96).

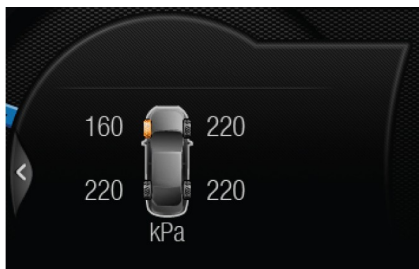
Note: You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand steering wheel controls.

Driver assist		
Traction control		
Adaptive steering	Steering in D	Select setting
	Steering in S	
BLIS		
Cross traffic alert		
Cruise control	Select setting	
Driver alert		
Hill start assist		
Intelligent AWD		
Lane keeping	Mode	Select setting
	Intensity	
Pre-collision Assist	Alert sensitivity	
	Distance indication	
	Active braking	
Front Park Pilot		

Information Displays

Driver assist		
Rear Park Pilot		
Speed limiter	Manual	
	Intelligent	
	Tolerance	
Traffic signs	On	
	Speed warning	Speed warning tolerance
		Chime
Tyre monitor	Tyre pressure	
Trailer control		

Tyre pressure
Displays your current vehicle tire pressures.



E194206

Settings		
Vehicle	Alarm system	Select setting
		Ask on exit
	Auto engine off	
	Chimes	Park space found
		Information

Information Displays

Settings				
	Select. suspen- sion	Select setting		
	DTE calculation	Select setting		
	Easy entry/exit			
	Lighting	Adaptive headlamps	Adaptive headlamps	
			Traffic setup	Select setting
		Auto highbeam		
		Headlamp delay	Select setting	
		Daytime lights		
	Locks	Auto lock		
		Auto unlock		
		Relock		
		Mislock		
		Unlocking	Select setting	
		Switches inhibit		
	Mirrors	Autofold		
	Oil life	Hold OK to reset		
	Park heater	Continue heat		
		Programming	Select setting	
	Park lock control			
	Power liftgate	Select setting		
	Seatbelts			
	Windows	Select setting		
	Wipers			
MyKey	Create MyKey	Select setting		
	Emergency Assist.			

Information Displays

Settings		
	Do not disturb	
	Traction control	
	Max speed	
	Speed minder	
	Volume limit	
	Clear MyKeys	Select setting
Display	Measure unit	Select setting
	Temperature unit	
	Tyre pressure	
	Language	

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available. The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.



E144636

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. The information display will automatically remove other messages after a short time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

Active Park

Message	Action
Active Park malfunction	The system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.

Information Displays

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise malfunction	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise control from engaging. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 190).
Adaptive cruise not available	A condition exists such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 190).
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 190).
Cruise control active Automatic braking turned off	The system has disabled the automatic braking.
Front sensor not aligned	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise control from engaging.
Adaptive cruise Driver resume control	The adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.
Adaptive cruise Speed too low to activate	Your vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.
Adaptive cruise Shift down	The adaptive cruise is automatically adjusting the gap distance and the driver needs to shift the transmission into a lower gear.

Airbag

Message	Action
Occupant sensor blocked Remove objects near passenger seat	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor. Remove blockage.

Information Displays

Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See Anti-Theft Alarm (page 51).
Alarm malfunction Service required	The system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.

All-Wheel Drive

Message	Action
AWD temporarily disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD off	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD malfunction Service required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Action
Engine stops in {seconds to shut off:#0} seconds	The engine is getting ready to shut off.
Engine stops for fuel economy	The engine has shut off to help increase fuel economy.
Engine stops in {seconds to shut off:#0} seconds OK = override	The engine is getting ready to shut off. You can press OK on the left steering wheel button to override the shut down.

Information Displays

Automatic High Beam Control

Message	Action
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.
Front camera temporarily not available	The front camera sensor has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down.

Auto Start-Stop

Message	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The engine needs to be restarted, press the brake pedal to start.
Auto StartStop Press brake harder to activate	The engine needs to be restarted, press the brake pedal harder to start.
Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine	The engine needs to be restarted, press the clutch pedal to start.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The engine needs to be restarted, press any pedal to start.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	Select neutral for the system to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	Select park for the system to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.
Auto StartStop not available	Conditions are not met for the Auto StartStop system to function properly.

Information Displays

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
BLIS malfunction	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	The system sensors are blocked. See Blind Spot Information System (page 203).
Cross Traffic Vehicle Coming From X	The system detects a vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System (page 203).
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See Blind Spot Information System (page 203).
Cross traffic malfunction	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer.

Climate Control

Message	Action
Auxiliary Heater On	The system is on. See Climate Control (page 111).
Auxiliary Heater Off	The system is off. See Climate Control (page 111).

Diesel Engine

Message	Action
Engine warming Please wait {seconds:00} seconds	In extremely cold weather, typically below -15°F (-26°C) and if the engine block heater is not utilized, your engine will not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds. This restriction allows your engine to circulate the oil properly in order to avoid engine damage.
Water in fuel Drain filter	The water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs draining.
Fuel pressure low	A low fuel pressure condition has occurred due to cold, low fuel level or fuel filters need to be changed.
Engine oil level low Add oil	A low oil level condition has occurred with the oil minder system. Check your engine oil level. If the problem persists, see an authorized dealer.

Information Displays

Doors and Locks

Message	Action
Driver door open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Passenger door open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Rear left door open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Rear right door open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Liftgate open	The door listed is not completely closed.
Boot open	The trunk is not completely closed.
Bonnet open	The hood is not completely closed.
Switches inhibited Security mode	The system has disabled the door switches.
Child lock malfunction Service required	There is a system malfunction with the child locks. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Driver Alert

Message	Action
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Take a rest break soon.

Electronic Stability Control

Message	Action
ESC Service required	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.
ESC off	The traction control system status.
ESC on	The traction control system status.
ESC Sport mode	The traction control system status.

Information Displays

Engine

Message	Action
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and allow the engine to cool. If the problem persists, see an authorized dealer. See Engine Coolant Check (page 248).
Engine fault Service now	Engine service is required. See an authorized dealer.
Water detected in fuel Service required	Displays when water is detected in the fuel. See an authorized dealer.
Engine oil level low Check level	Check the engine oil level. See Engine Oil Check (page 247).

Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check fuel fill inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Fuel door opening	Wait for up to 15 seconds while the fuel system depressurizes.
Fuel door open	The fuel system has finished depressurizing and you can begin to refuel.
Close fuel door	A reminder to close the fuel door.
Refuel error See manual	There is an error in attempting to refill your vehicle.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill start assist not available	Hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See Hill Start Assist (page 171).

Information Displays

Keys and Keyless Entry

Message	Action
Press brake to start	A reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
No key detected	The system does not detect a key in your vehicle. See Keyless Starting (page 142).
Restart now or key is needed	You pressed the start/stop button to switch off the engine and your vehicle does not detect your intelligent access key inside your vehicle.
Run Power Active	Your vehicle is in the run ignition state.
Starting system malfunction	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.
Key program successful	You have successfully programmed an intelligent access key to the system.
Key program failure	You have failed to program an intelligent access key to the system.
Maximum number of keys learned	You have programmed the maximum number of keys to the system.
Not enough keys learned	You have not programmed enough keys to the system.
Key battery low Replace soon	The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.
Engine on	Informs you that they you are exiting your vehicle and the engine is on.

Information Displays

Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests you to keep your hands on the steering wheel.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Engine oil pressure low	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer.
Change engine oil soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See Engine Oil Check (page 247).
Oil change required	The oil life left is at 0%. See Engine Oil Check (page 247).
Brake fluid level low	The brake fluid level is low, inspected the brake system immediately. See Brake Fluid Check (page 249).
Check brake system	The brake system needs servicing. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Engine coolant overtemperature	The engine coolant temperature is excessively high.

Information Displays

Message	Action
Power reduced to lower engine temperature	The engine has reduced power to help reduce high engine temperature.
Transport / Factory Mode	Your vehicle is still in Transport or Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.
See manual	The powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey not created	You cannot program a MyKey.
MyKey active Drive safely	MyKey is active.
Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	When switching on your vehicle and MyKey is in use, displays that the MyKey speed limit is on.
Vehicle near top speed	MyKey is in use, the MyKey speed limit is on and your vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
MyKey Vehicle at top speed	You have reached the speed limit set for your MyKey.
Check speed Drive safely	You have an active MyKey with a programmed set speed limit.
Buckle up to unmute audio	Belt-Minder turns on with a MyKey in use.
MyKey ESC on	With a MyKey in use, AdvanceTrac turns on.
MyKey Traction control on	With a MyKey in use, traction control turns on.
MyKey Park Pilot cannot be deactivated	With a MyKey in use, park aid is always on.
MyKey Lane keeping alert on	With a MyKey in use, lane keeping alert turns on.

Information Displays

Park Aid

Message	Action
Check front Park Pilot	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See Principle of Operation (page 176).
Check rear Park Pilot	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See Principle of Operation (page 176).
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park brake applied	You have set the parking brake and you have driven the vehicle more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after you have released the parking brake, contact an authorized dealer.
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake is not set.
Park brake Maintenance mode	The electric parking brake is running a diagnostic check.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake is set but you have not released it.
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	The electric parking brake is set but you have not released it and your vehicle is moving.
Park brake Limited func- tion Service required	The electric park brake system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Park brake System over- heated	You have not released the electric parking brake causing it to overheat.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake is set and you have started your vehicle.
Park brake applied	The electric parking brake is set.
Park brake applied	You have released the electric parking brake.

Information Displays

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering lock malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.

Pre-Collision Warning System

Message	Action
Forward Alert malfunction	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer.
Forward Alert not available Sensor blocked See manual	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See Pre-Collision Assist (page 208).
Forward Alert not available	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer.

Seats

Message	Action
Memory recall not permitted while driving	A reminder that memory seats are not available while driving.
Memory {0} saved	Shows where you have saved your memory setting.

Information Displays

Starting System

Message	Action
Press brake to start	A reminder to apply the brake when starting your vehicle .
Cranking time exceeded	The starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start your vehicle.
Engine start pending Please wait	The starter is attempting to start your vehicle.
Pending start cancelled	The system has cancelled the pending start.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tyre pressure low	One or more tires on your vehicle has low tire pressure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 266).
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 266).
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning or your spare tire is in use. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 266). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

Information Displays

Towing

Message	Action
Trailer sway Reduce speed	Your trailer sway control has detected trailer sway so you need to reduce your speed.
Tow bar unlocked Towing prohibited See manual	Swivel the tow ball arm again. If the message remains on, contact an authorized dealer. See Tow Ball (page 222).
Tow bar malfunction Towing prohibited Service required	See an authorized dealer.
Tow bar not activated Start engine and retry	The vehicle battery may not have a full charge. Start the engine, and then swivel the tow ball arm. If the message remains on, contact an authorized dealer. See Tow Ball (page 222).
Tow bar extended Check trailer wiring	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system. See Using Traction Control (page 173).
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system. See Using Traction Control (page 173).
Spinout detected Hazards activated	A spinout has occurred and the hazards are on.

Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission malfunction Service now	See an authorized dealer.
Transmission overtemperature Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as possible.
Transmission overheating Stop safely	The transmission has overheated and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Message	Action
Transmission Service required	See an authorized dealer.
Transmission too hot Press brake	The transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool.
Transmission limited function See manual	The transmission has overheated and has limited functionality. See Automatic Transmission (page 159).
Transmission warming up Please wait	The transmission is too cold. Wait for it to warm up before you drive.
Transmission not in Park	A reminder to shift into park.
Press brake pedal	A request for you to apply the brake as needed by the transmission.
Transmission adjusted	The transmission has adjusted the shift strategy.
Transmission Adapt-Mode	The transmission is adjusting the shift strategy.
Transmission Indicating-Mode Lockup on	The transmission is locked and unable to select gears.
Transmission Indicating-Mode Lockup off	The transmission is unlocked and free to select gears.

Climate Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

Recirculated Air

WARNING



Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Fully close all the windows.

Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

Air Conditioning

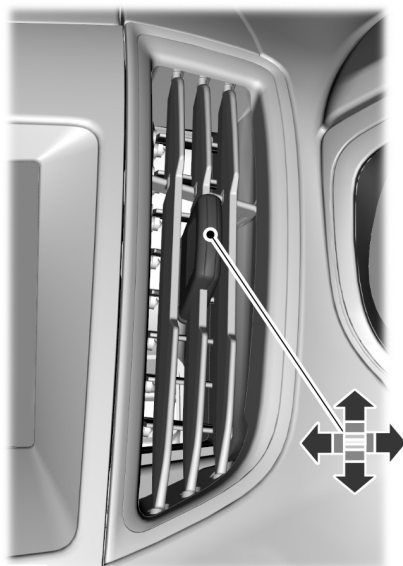
The system directs air through the evaporator for cooling. The evaporator extracts humidity from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The system directs the resulting condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which may cause a small pool to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

Note: The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 39°F (4°C).

Note: When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.

AIR VENTS

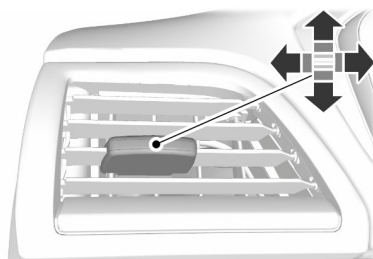
Center Air Vents



E207195

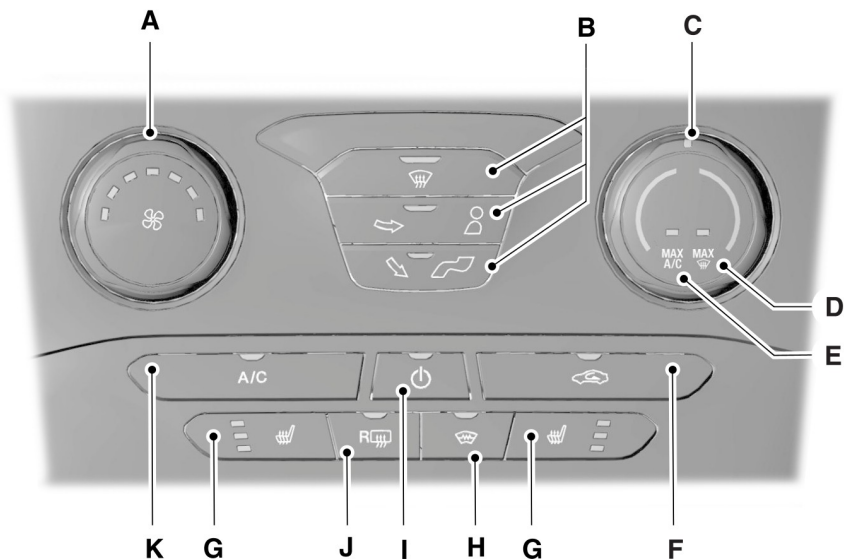
Climate Control

Side Air Vents



E179687

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL (EMTC)



E188681

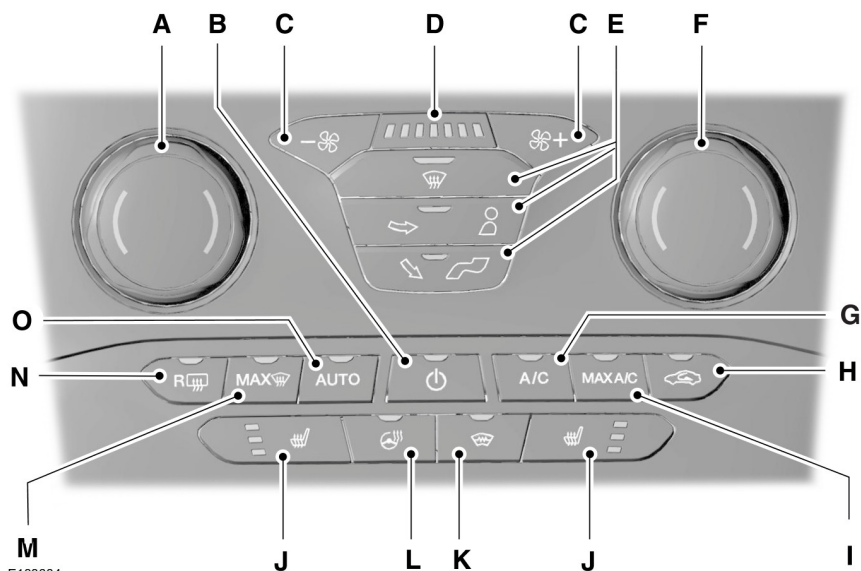
- A **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- B **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

Climate Control

- C **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.
- D **MAX Defrost:** Adjust the control to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents and the air conditioning automatically turns on. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- E **MAX A/C:** Adjust the control for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents and the air conditioning automatically turns on.
- F **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
Note: Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.
- G **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 137).
- H **Heated windshield (if equipped):** Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. See **Heated Windshield** (page 123).
- I **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- J **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).
- K **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

Climate Control

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: DUAL AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (DATC)



- A Left-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the left-hand side. This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.
- B Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- C Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- D Fan speed indicator:** Illuminates to indicate fan speed.
- E Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.
- F Right-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature on the right-hand side.

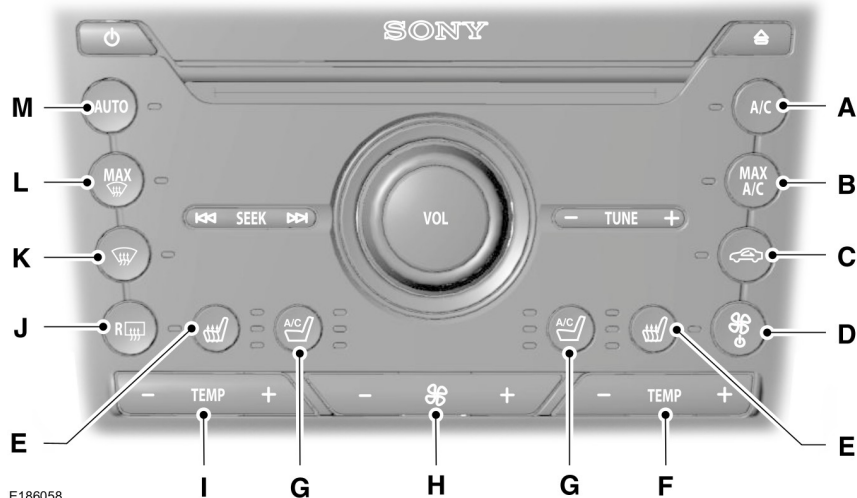
Climate Control

- G A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
- Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- H Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.
- I MAX A/C:** Press the button for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.
- J Heated seats:** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 137).
- K Heated windshield:** Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. See **Heated Windshield** (page 123).
- L Heated steering wheel:** Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.
- M MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.
- Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- N Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).
- O AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.

Climate Control

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: DUAL AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (DATC)/SONY AUDIO SYSTEM

Note: You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 351).



- A **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

- B **MAX A/C:** Press the button for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

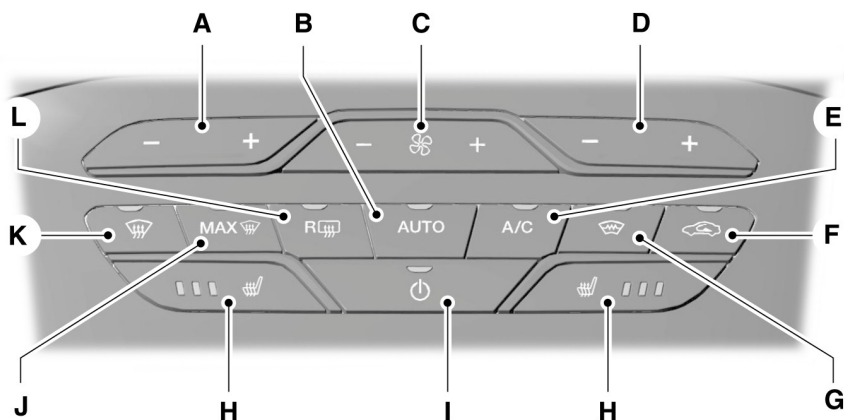
Climate Control

- C **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
Note: Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.
- D **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- E **Heated seats:** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 137).
- F **Right-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature on the right-hand side.
Note: The maximum difference between left-hand and right-hand settings may be limited. Whenever you make an adjustment that would result in a larger difference, both settings will change together.
- G **Climate controlled seats:** Press the button to switch the climate controlled seats on and off. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 138).
- H **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- I **Left-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the left-hand side. This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.
- J **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).
- K **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- L **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.
Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- M **AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.

Climate Control

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: TRIPLE ZONE AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL

Note: You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 351).



E188723

- A **Left-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the left-hand side. This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.
- B **AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.
- C **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- D **Right-hand temperature control:** Adjust the temperature on the right-hand side.

Note: The maximum difference between left-hand and right-hand settings may be limited. Whenever you make an adjustment that would result in a larger difference, both settings will change together.

Climate Control

- E **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
- Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- F **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.
- G **Heated windshield:** Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. See **Heated Windshield** (page 123).
- H **Heated seats:** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 137).
- I **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- J **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.
- Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- K **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- L **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Climate Control

Note: Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Note: Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: To improve the time to reach comfort in hot weather, drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Manual Climate Control

Note: To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.

Automatic Climate Control

Note: Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the cabin to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

Note: If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.

Note: If you select **AUTO** during hot outside temperatures, or when the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.

Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting.	Press the AUTO button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Climate Control

Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the AUTO button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	Press the MAX A/C button.
2	Drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.	

Recommended Settings for Cooling

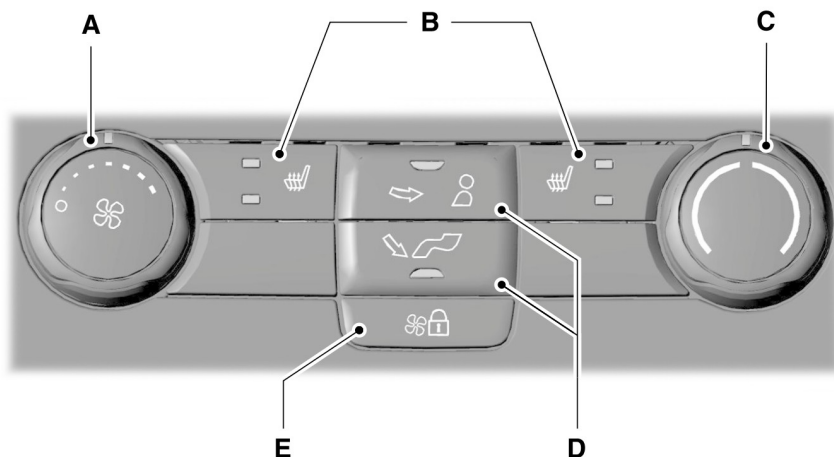
	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the AUTO button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the instrument panel air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Climate Control

Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Select the windshield air vents using the air distribution buttons.	Press the defrost button.
2	Press the A/C button.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	

REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROLS



E188689

Climate Control

- A **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- B **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 137).
- C **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.
- D **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the instrument panel or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.
- E **Fan speed control lock:** When illuminated, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS (If Equipped)

Heated Rear Window

Note: Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.



Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time. Start the engine before you switch the heated rear window on.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

Heated Exterior Mirror

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors will automatically turn on.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield automatically turns off after a short period of time. Start the engine before you switch the heated windshield on.

Note: The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

Note: Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

Climate Control


Replace the filter at regular intervals.


For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.


Seats

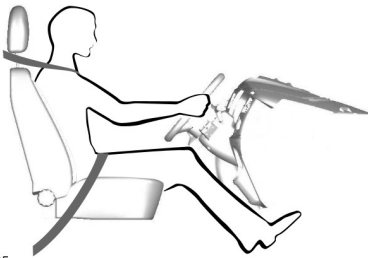
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

 Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

 Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat backrest reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat backrest, with your feet on the floor.

 Do not place objects higher than the seat backrest to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:


- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest more than 30 degrees.


- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimeters) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.


Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

 Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

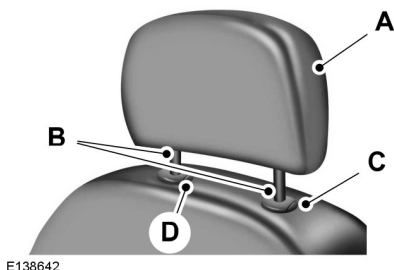
 The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

 Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

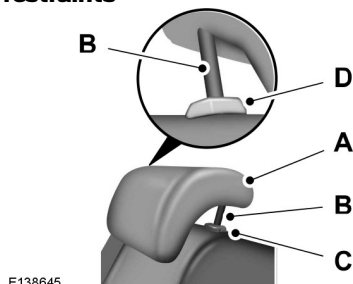
Seats

Note: Adjust the seatback to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

Front seat head restraints



Rear seat outboard and center head restraints



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until in locks.

Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

Seats

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

MANUAL SEATS

WARNINGS



Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.



Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.



Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

The driver and passenger manual seats may consist of:



E144631

- A A bar to move the seat backward and forward.
- B A control to adjust the lumbar of the seatback (driver seat only).
- C A lever to adjust the height of the seat (driver seat only).
- D A lever to adjust the angle of the seatback.

POWER SEATS

WARNINGS

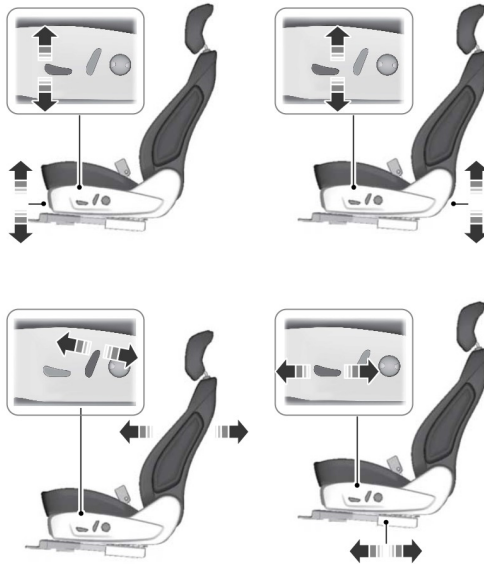


Do not adjust the front seat or seatback while your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



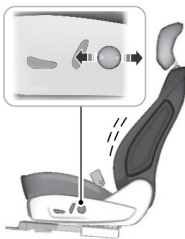
Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

Seats



E144632

Power Lumbar



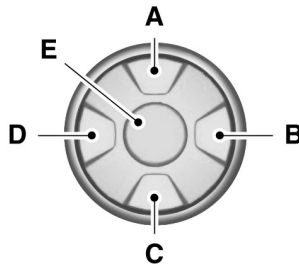
E165608

Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active Motion (If Equipped)

Note: The massage system will turn off after 20 minutes.

Note: The engine must be running or the vehicle must be in accessory mode to activate the seats.

Note: Allow a few seconds for any selection to activate. The seatback and cushion massage cannot function at the same time.



E156301

Seats

	Message mode	Lumbar and bolster mode
A	Back massage intensity adjustment	Upper lumbar
B	Massage intensity decrease and off*	Lumbar decrease
C	Cushion massage intensity adjustment	Lower lumbar**
D	Massage intensity increase	Lumbar increase
E	On and off	-

*The massage feature will default to an alternating massage mode with back massage intensity adjustment. The lumbar and bolster feature will default to the middle lumbar mode.

**Press C a second time to adjust the back bolster. Press C a third time to adjust the cushion bolster.

You can also adjust this feature through the touchscreen.



Press the Menu Settings icon, then Vehicle. Choose Multi-Contour Seats.

When switched on, the system displays directions for you to adjust the lumbar settings in your seat or to set the massage function.

To access and make adjustments to the lumbar setting:

1. Choose the desired seat to adjust.
2. Press the + or - to adjust the lumbar intensity.

To access and make adjustments to the massage setting:

1. Press the Menu Settings icon, then Vehicle. Choose Multi-Contour Seats.
2. Choose the desired seat to adjust.
3. Press OFF, LO or HI.

MEMORY FUNCTION

WARNINGS



Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature automatically recalls the position of the driver seat, power mirrors and optional power steering column. The memory control is on the driver door.

Seats



E142554

Saving a PreSet Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the seat, exterior mirrors and steering column to your desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions. You can save a memory preset at any time.

Recalling a Preset Position

Press and release the preset button associated with your desired driving position. The seat, mirrors and steering column move to the position stored for that preset.

Note: You can only recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) (and your vehicle is not moving) if the ignition is on.

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your integrated keyhead transmitter or keyless entry key fob if it is linked to a preset position.

Note: Using a linked key fob to recall your memory position when the ignition is off moves the seat to the Easy Entry position.

Note: Pressing any active memory feature adjustment control – power seat, mirror or steering column switch (or any memory button) during a memory recall, cancels the operation.

Linking a Preset Position to your Remote Control or Keyless Entry Key Fob

You can save preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or keyless entry key fobs.

1. With the ignition on, move the memory positions to the desired positions.
2. Press and hold the desired preset button for about five seconds. A tone sounds after about two seconds. Continue holding until a second tone sounds.
3. Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

Note: If more than one linked remote control or keyless entry key fob is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.

Easy Entry and Exit Feature

If you enable the easy entry and exit feature, it automatically moves the driver seat position rearward up to two inches (five centimeters) when you switch the ignition off.

The driver seat returns to the previous position when you switch the ignition on.

You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

Seats

REAR SEATS

Second Row Seats

Moving the Seats Backward and Forward

WARNING



Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.



E188912

Seats

Adjusting the Seatback



E188913

To recline the seatback, pull the lever on the outboard seats or the strap on the center seat and lean back against the seatback until it reaches the desired position.

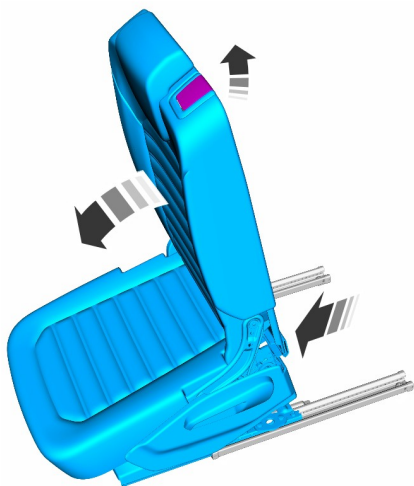
To raise the seatback, pull the lever up and push the seat cushion forward using your weight.

Easy Entry Position (Vehicles with Third Row Seats Only)

Note: You can move the outboard seats forward to allow access to the third row seats.

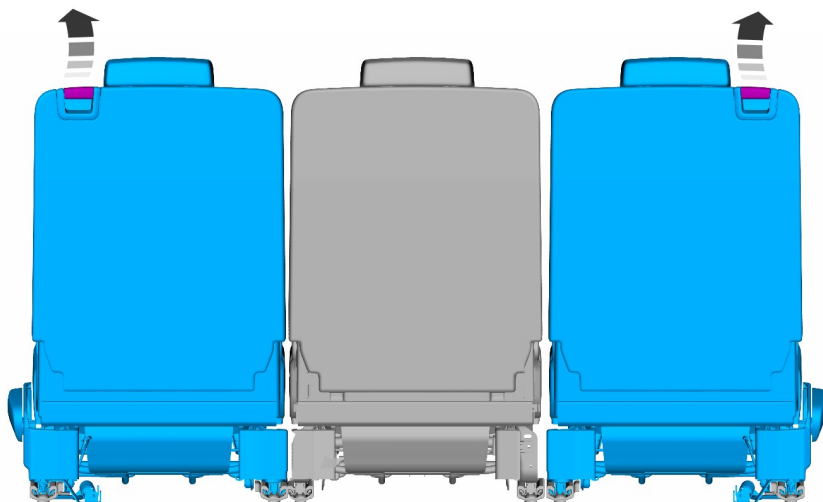
Seats

1. Pull the lever once. Move the seat into the position shown and slide the complete seat forward.



E188914

Seats



E188915

2. When exiting your vehicle from the third row seats, push the lever up on the upper corner of the outboard seats.
3. To return the seat to the seating position, slide the seat backward and down until the seat latches to the floor. The seat will stop automatically at a midway position.
4. To move the seat further back, pull the lever under the front of the seat and slide it backward.

Folding the Seatbacks Down

WARNING



When folding the seatbacks down, hold the seatback to avoid getting your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.

1. Lower the head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 125).
2. Slide the seats backward as far as they will go.
3. Insert the center seat belt into the retainer in the roof.

Seats



E188916

4. On the outboard seats, pull the lever and fold the seatback flat.
5. On the center seat, pull the strap between the seat cushion and the seatback and fold down the seatback.

To return the seat to the seating position, pull the seatback until it engages.

The controls are located on the left-hand rear quarter trim panel (accessible from the liftgate area).

EasyFold™ Folding Seat

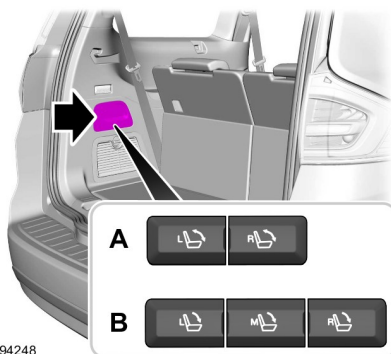
WARNING



Make sure that the seat is unoccupied when folding it down. Folding the seat while occupied could result in damage to the seat or injury.

Note: The power feature is operational when the vehicle is in park (P) and the liftgate has been open for less than 10 minutes.

Seats



E194248

- A Third row seat (optional) - For Galaxy vehicles, press the left or right control to lower or raise your desired seatback. For S-Max vehicles, press the left or right control to lower your desired seatback. Lift the seatback until it latches in the upright position.
- B Second row seats - Press the left, center or right control to lower your desired seatback. To return the seatback to the upright position, lift the seatback until it latches in the upright position.

Third Row Seats

WARNING



Do not sit in a third row seat when the second row seat in front of it is folded flat.

Moving the Seats Backward and Forward (Galaxy)

WARNING

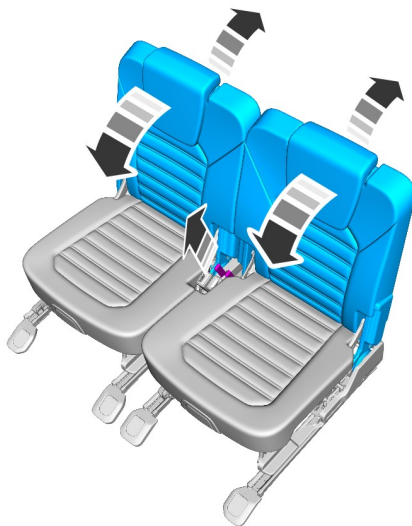


Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.



E188918

Adjusting the Seatback (Galaxy)



E188919


Seats

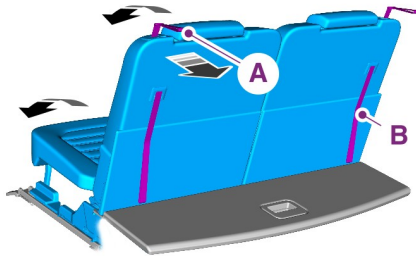
To recline the seatback, pull the strap and lean back against the seatback until it reaches the desired position.

To raise the seatback, pull the strap and let the seatback return to the upright position.

Folding the Seats Flat

WARNING

 When folding the seatbacks down, hold the seatback to avoid getting your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.




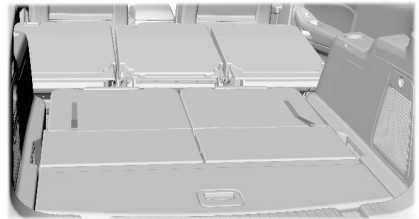
E188920

1. Pull loop A at the top of the seat. The seatback will automatically fold down.
2. To return the seat to the seating position, pull loop B.

Creating a Level Load Floor

WARNING


 When transporting a load with the seats folded flat, always fold the relevant carpeted cover forward to cover the folded seats.



E188923

HEATED SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNING

 People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.

Seats



E146941

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS

Heated Seats

WARNING



Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146322

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

Cooled Seats (If Equipped)

The cooled seats will only function when the engine is running.



E146309

To operate the cooled seats:

Press the cooled seat symbol to cycle through the various cooling settings and off. Cooler settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the cooled seats are on, the feature will turn itself off. You will need to reactivate it.

Climate controlled seat air filter replacement (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with lifetime air filters that are integrated with the seats. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

Auxiliary Power Points

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING



Do not plug electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps. After you switch the ignition off, the power supply works only for a maximum of 75 minutes.

Note: Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the outlet and blows the fuse.

Note: Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

Note: Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watt or a fuse may blow.

Note: Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.

Note: Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

Note: Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent your vehicle battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when your engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when your vehicle is in park (P) for extended periods.

Location

Power points may be found:

- On the center console.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the console.
- In the cargo area.

230 Volt Power Point (If Equipped)

WARNING



Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload. Powering multiple devices can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: Keep the vehicle running to use the power point.

You can use the power point for powering electrical devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

The power point indicator light, located on the power point, shows when the power point is ready for use.

When the power point indicator light is:

- On — the power point is ready to supply power.
- Off — the power point power supply is off and so is the ignition.
- Flashing — the power point is in fault mode.

The power point temporarily turns off its power if the electrical load exceeds the 150 watt limit. The power point can also switch to a fault mode if it detects overloading, overheating or shorting conditions.

Auxiliary Power Points

For overloading and shorting conditions, unplug your device and switch the ignition off and then on.

For an overheating condition, let the system cool first. Then, switch the ignition off and on again.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

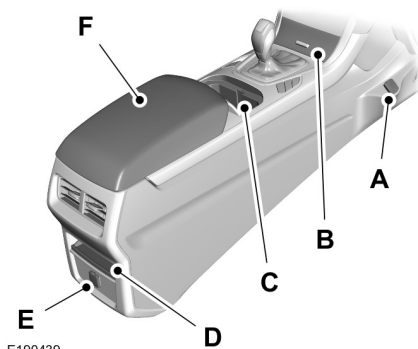
- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

Storage Compartments

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or collisions, including hot drinks which may spill.

Available console features include:



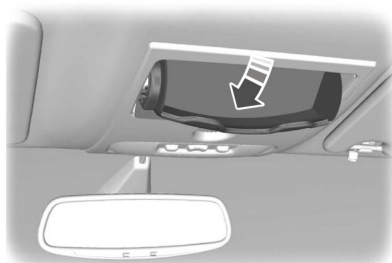
E190439

- A Auxiliary power point (if equipped).
- B Storage compartment with auxiliary input jack, media hub, and optional USB port.
- C Cupholder.
- D Storage tray.
- E Auxiliary power point with power inverter or cigar lighter (if equipped).
- F Storage compartment with auxiliary power point.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, auxiliary power point locations could be in locations A or B.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with the smoker's package, auxiliary power points in locations B and E could be replaced with a cigar lighter.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E75193

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS



Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E72128

Note: Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

0 (off) - The ignition is off.

Note: When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.

I (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

Note: Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid your vehicle battery losing charge.

II (on) - All electrical circuits operational. Warning lamps and indicators are illuminated.

III (start) - cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

KEYLESS STARTING

Note: The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.

Note: A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Ignition Modes



E144447

The keyless starting system has three modes:

Off: Turns the ignition off.

- Without applying the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission), press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

On: All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission), press and release the button once.

Start: Starts the vehicle. The engine may not start when the vehicle starts.

- Press the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission), and then press the button for any length of time. An indicator light on the button illuminates when then ignition is on and when the engine starts.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS VEHICLE SYSTEM

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that operates automatically.

The system will lock the steering wheel after a short period of time once you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside your vehicle, or when you lock your vehicle.

Note: The system will not lock the steering wheel when the ignition is on or while your vehicle is moving.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

Switch the ignition on to unlock the steering wheel.

Note: You may have to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITHOUT: KEYLESS VEHICLE SYSTEM

WARNING



Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

To lock the steering wheel:

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Rotate the steering wheel slightly to engage the lock.

To unlock the steering wheel:

1. Insert the key in the ignition switch.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Note: You may need to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking if there is a steering wheel load applied.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases. This helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds without the engine starting before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine 3 times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.

Before starting the engine check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral.
- Switch the ignition key to position **II**. For vehicles with keyless ignition, see the following instructions.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully depress the brake pedal. For vehicles with manual transmission, fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** to start the engine. Release the key when the engine starts.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: If you cannot start the engine after the first attempt, wait for a short period and try again.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

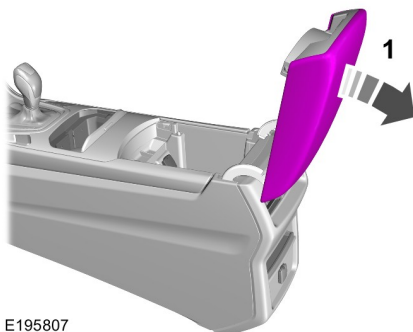
Note: A valid passive key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Briefly press the push button ignition switch.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

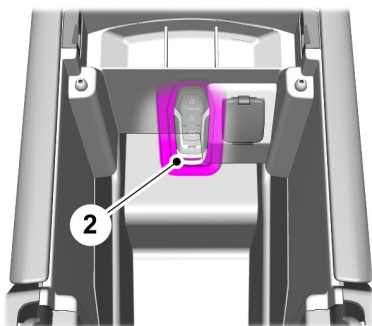
If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:



E195807

Starting and Stopping the Engine

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.



E195808

2. With the buttons facing the rear of your vehicle and the key ring up, place the passive key into the backup slot.
3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal then the power button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. For vehicles with automatic transmission, fully depress the brake pedal. For vehicles with manual transmission, fully depress the clutch pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral.
3. Fully depress the accelerator pedal.
4. Keep the accelerator pedal fully depressed and press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Automatic Engine Shutdown

For vehicles with a keyless ignition, this feature automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

Starting and Stopping the Engine

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Reset the timer by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Temporarily switch off the shutdown feature during the current ignition cycle using the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).
- Press **OK** or **RESET** to temporarily switch the feature off during the current ignition cycle.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, shift into park (P). For vehicles with a manual transmission, shift into first gear.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Press the push button ignition switch.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Note: The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators will be turned off.

Note: If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Put the transmission into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmission, or first gear for vehicles with manual transmission and switch the ignition off.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Put the transmission into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmission, or first gear for vehicles with manual transmission.
3. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Cold or Hot Engine



1. Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
3. Start the engine.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

Note: Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

Note: When the temperature is below 5°F (-15°C), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.

Note: You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time.

Note: After a limited number of attempts to start your engine, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.

Failure to Start

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The filter forms part of the emissions reduction system on your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

Regeneration

WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Note: Avoid running out of fuel.

Note: During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

Note: Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Note: After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function. Your vehicle will carry out this process automatically.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Vehicles With a Turbocharger

WARNING



Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

WARNINGS



Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Note: The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220-240 volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use an extension cord suitable for use outdoors and in cold temperatures. It should be clearly marked that it is suitable for use with outdoor appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

Unique Driving Characteristics

AUTO-START-STOP

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when your vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights.

WARNINGS



If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, move the transmission selector lever to position P before leaving your vehicle.



The engine may restart automatically if required by the system.



Switch the ignition off before opening the hood or carrying out any maintenance.



Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.

Note: The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine shuts down. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 82). It flashes amber with a message when the driver needs to shift to neutral or press a pedal. See **Information Messages** (page 96). If it illuminates grey the system is not available.



Using Auto-Start-Stop Manual Transmission

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch and accelerator pedal.

To Re-Start the Engine

Press the clutch pedal.

Note: To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the transmission lever to neutral and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.

Note: Start-stop also comes with stall recovery. If you fully depress the clutch pedal after stalling the engine, the engine automatically restarts.

Using Auto-Start-Stop Automatic Transmission

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle in drive (D).
2. Release the accelerator pedal.
3. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

Note: The engine will also shut down if the gearshift lever is in park (P) or neutral (N) regardless of brake pedal position.

To Re-Start the Engine

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

Limitations of Use

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low engine operating temperature.
- To maintain the interior climate.
- The battery charge level is low.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- Opening the driver door when in motion.
- When the driver safety belt is unfastened.
- The heated windshield is on.

Unique Driving Characteristics

- During regeneration of the diesel particulate filter.
- Transmission is in Sport or Manual modes (automatic transmission only).

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate, for example air conditioning.
- The battery charge level is low.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The heated windshield is turned on.
- When the driver safety belt is unfastened (automatic transmission only).
- The driver door is opened (automatic transmission only).
- Transmission is shifted to Sport or Manual modes (automatic transmission only).

Note: For vehicles with auto-start-stop, the battery requirement is different. Replace it with one of exactly the same specification as the original.

Switching the System On and Off



When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

To switch the system off, press the switch and the word OFF illuminates. Press again to switch the system back on. The system only switches off for the current ignition cycle.

Note: If the system detects a malfunction, it turns off. The OFF lamp on the switch illuminates continuously. If this remains on after an ignition cycle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: The system may not function if you leave electrical equipment connected with the ignition off.

Fuel and Refueling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel capless fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.



Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking "Antabuse" or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

WARNINGS



Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.



Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

Note: We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

Note: We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

WARNINGS



Do not mix diesel with oil, gasoline or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.



Do not add kerosene, paraffin or gasoline to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.

WARNINGS



Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

Note: We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

Note: We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.

Note: We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from your dealer.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION - VEHICLES WITH: SPARE WHEEL

The fuel filler funnel is located in the left-hand side rear storage compartment.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION - VEHICLES WITH: TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

The fuel filler funnel is in the under floor storage compartment behind the right-hand front seat.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Fuel and Refueling

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.1 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.


Filling a Portable Fuel Container


Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.


Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

 Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel system filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

 Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

WARNINGS

 Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the plastic funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 153).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages and remove the fuel tank filler cap.

Note: *Capless fuel systems do not have a fuel tank filler cap.*

2. Fully insert the plastic funnel into the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



E157452

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the plastic funnel from the fuel tank filler pipe opening.
5. Replace the fuel tank filler cap and close the fuel tank filler door.


Fuel and Refueling

6. Clean the plastic funnel and place it back in your vehicle or properly dispose of it.

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*






CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING

 Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.


Driving with a Catalytic Converter

WARNINGS








-  Avoid running out of fuel.
-  Do not crank the engine for long periods.
-  Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.
-  Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 231).
-  Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

REFUELING

WARNINGS

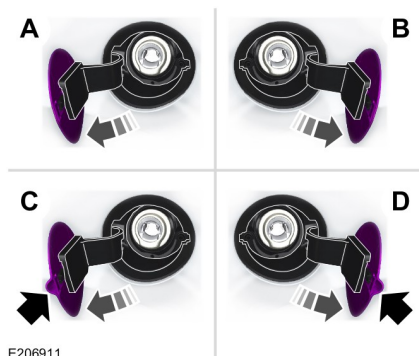
 Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNINGS

-  Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.
-  Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.
-  Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This may cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked immediately.
-  When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.
-  If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel tank filler door briefly from a distance not less than 8 in (20 cm).
-  Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.
-  Stop refueling after the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the second time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

Note: *Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.*

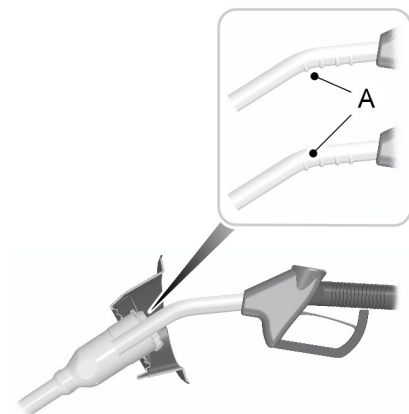
Fuel and Refueling



E206911

- A Type 1: Left hand side - press the fuel tank filler door to open it.
- B Type 1: Right hand side - press the fuel tank filler door to open it.
- C Type 2: Left hand side - pull the fuel tank filler door to open it.
- D Type 2: Right hand side - pull the fuel tank filler door to open it.

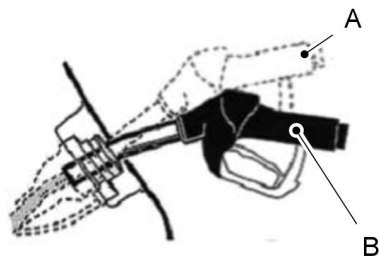
1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.



E139202

Note: When you insert the correct size fuel pump nozzle a spring loaded inhibitor will open.

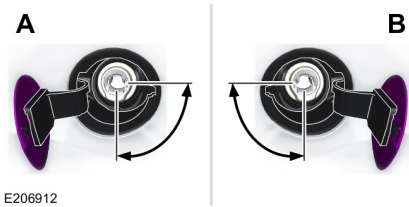
2. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



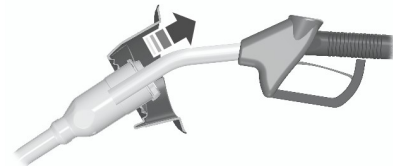
E139203

3. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A may affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

Fuel and Refueling



4. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



5. Slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO₂ and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted, payload and towing.

The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in the fuel tank and when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.*

Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Allow no more than two automatic shut-offs when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the refueling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km) of driving (this is the engine break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,500 mi (4,000 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

Fuel and Refueling

5. Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled).

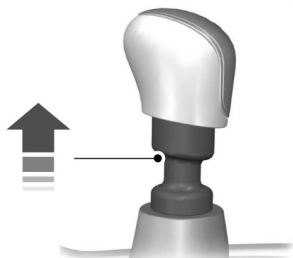
Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or freeway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, your vehicle will use more fuel in cold temperatures.

Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Selecting Reverse Gear

Do not engage reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.



E99067

Raise the collar when you select reverse gear.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Selector Lever Positions



E142628

P	Park
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D	Drive
S	Sport mode

WARNING



Apply the brakes before shifting the gearshift lever to a forward or reverse gear. Keep the brakes applied until you are ready to move off.

Press the button on the front of the gearshift lever to shift to each position.

The gearshift lever position will be shown in the instrument cluster display.

Park (P)

WARNINGS



Shift the gearshift lever to park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.



Apply the parking brake and shift the gearshift lever to park (P) before leaving your vehicle. Make sure that the gearshift lever is latched in position.

Transmission

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

Note: A warning tone sounds if you open the driver door and you have not shifted the gearshift lever to park (P).

Reverse (R)

WARNINGS



Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.



Always come to a complete stop before shifting the gearshift lever out of reverse (R).

Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) to allow your vehicle to move backward.

Neutral (N)

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy and smoothness. Shift the gearshift lever to drive (D) to allow your vehicle to move forward and shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will shift to the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and your input.

Sport Mode (S)

Switch on sport mode by shifting the gearshift lever to sport (S).

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission

Your vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic transmission gearshift lever. The SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears up or down as desired.

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, SelectShift still automatically makes some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although SelectShift makes some downshifts for you, it still allows you to downshift at any time as long as the SelectShift determines that damage will not be caused to the engine from over-revving.

Note: Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by pressing the + button.

If equipped with the toggle on the gearshift lever, press the + toggle switch on the side of the gearshift lever to activate SelectShift.

- Press the (+) button to upshift.
- Press the (-) button to downshift.



E142629

Transmission

If equipped with steering wheel paddles, pull the + paddle on the steering wheel to activate SelectShift.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.



The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear. If a gear is requested but not available due to vehicle conditions (low speed, too high engine speed for requested gear selection), the current gear will flash three times.

Emergency Park Position Release Lever

WARNINGS



Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.



This procedure requires you to shift the gearshift lever out of park (P) causing your vehicle to roll. Make sure you fully set the parking brake before attempting to release the gearshift lever.



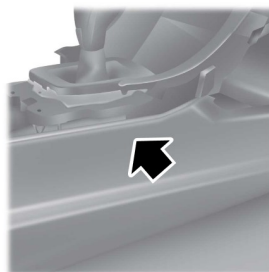
If you release the parking brake and the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working correctly. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

Note: For some markets this feature will be disabled.

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents moving the gearshift lever from park (P) when the ignition is in the on position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

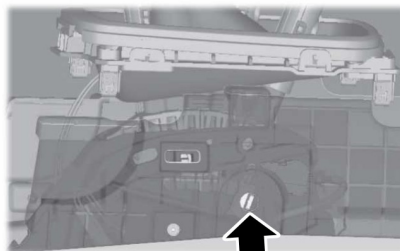
If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of park (P) position with the ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction may have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 233).

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from park (P):



E155984

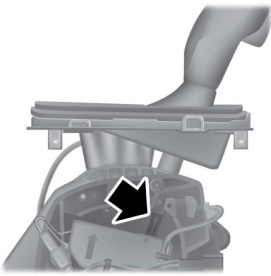
1. Remove the side panel on the right side of the gearshift lever.



E155985

2. Locate the access hole.

Transmission



E155983

3. Insert the screwdriver (or similar tool) into the access hole and press the lever forward while pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.
4. Remove the tool and reinstall the panel.
5. Start the vehicle and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Note: Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern.

Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

All-Wheel Drive

USING ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

All-wheel drive uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The AWD system is active all the time and requires no input from the operator.

Note: *Your AWD vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.*

Note: *A warning message will be displayed in the information display when an AWD system fault is present. See **Information Messages** (page 96). An AWD system fault will cause the AWD system to default to front-wheel drive only mode. When this warning message is displayed, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer.*

Note: *A warning message will be displayed in the information display if the AWD system has overheated. See **Information Messages** (page 96). This condition may occur if the vehicle was operated in extreme conditions with excessive wheel slip, such as deep sand. To resume normal AWD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location and stop the engine for at least 10 minutes. After the engine has been restarted and the AWD system has adequately cooled, the warning message will turn off and normal AWD function will return.*

Do not use a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided. If the mini-spare tire is installed, the AWD system may disable automatically and enter front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. This condition will be indicated by a warning in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96). If there is a warning message in the information display from using the spare tire, this indicator should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced normal road tire and cycling the ignition off and on. It is recommended to reinstall the repaired or replaced road tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive or damage the AWD system.

Driving In Special Conditions With All-Wheel Drive (AWD)

AWD vehicles are equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the highway.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Basic operating principles in special conditions

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

All-Wheel Drive

If Your Vehicle Goes Off the Edge of the Pavement

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or rollover. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

WARNINGS



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the transmission is in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the lock position or turn the vehicle off using the start/stop button and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.



Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

If your vehicle is equipped with AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™, it may be beneficial to disengage the AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ system while attempting to rock the vehicle.

Emergency Maneuvers

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid "over-driving" your vehicle (i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.
- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

All-Wheel Drive

Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Do not drive your AWD vehicle in deep sand. This will cause the AWD system to overheat. After the system has cooled down, normal AWD function will return.

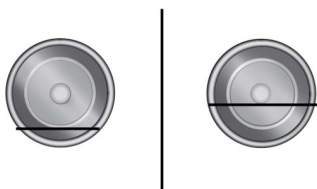
Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

Mud and Water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks) (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.



E142667

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even AWD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.*

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and AWD PTU (Power Transfer Unit) lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.

Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

Note: *Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

All-Wheel Drive

If you do stall out, do not try to turnaround because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



E143949

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.

Driving on Snow and Ice

WARNING



If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of the vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

Note: Excessive tire slippage can cause driveline damage.

AWD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an AWD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. Since your vehicle is equipped with a four wheel (ABS), do not “pump” the brakes. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 168). for more information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system (ABS).

Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lowering kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

All-Wheel Drive

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will rollover as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder or luggage racks).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to off-highway usage.

Brakes

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning the Alloy Wheels** (page 260).

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.



See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 82).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake rapidly by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal, and can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you turn the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.



If the brake warning lamp illuminates when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Brakes

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake replaces the conventional handbrake. The operating switch is located in the center console.

WARNING



Always set the parking brake and leave your vehicle with the transmission in park (P) (automatic transmission) or in first gear (1) or reverse (R) (manual transmission).

Note: When you apply the electric parking brake in certain conditions, for example, on a steep hill, the electric parking brake may reapply the brakes within three to ten minutes.

Note: You may notice various noises when you apply and release the electric parking brake. This is normal and no cause for concern.

Parking On a Hill (Vehicles With a Manual Transmission)

If you park your vehicle facing uphill, move the transmission to first gear (1) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb. If you park your vehicle facing downhill, move the transmission to reverse (R) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

Applying the Electric Parking brake

WARNING



The brake system warning lamp will flash during an emergency parking brake apply. If the brake system warning lamp continues to flash, there could be a problem with your electric parking brake.

Note: The brake system warning lamp will illuminate for ten seconds, if the ignition is turned off after the electric parking brake has been applied, or the electric parking brake has been applied after the ignition has been turned off.

Note: The electric parking brake will not automatically apply. You must apply the electric parking brake using the electric parking brake switch.



E147230

Pull the switch up to apply the electric parking brake.

The brake system warning lamp will flash for approximately 2 seconds and then illuminate to confirm that the electric parking brake has been applied. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

Apply the electric parking brake when the vehicle is moving

WARNINGS



Applying the electric parking brake while moving will result in use of the anti-lock braking system. Do not use the electric parking brake system when the vehicle is moving unless the normal brake system is unable to stop the vehicle.

Brakes

WARNINGS



With the exception of emergency conditions (for example, the brake pedal does not work or is blocked), do not apply the electric parking brake while the vehicle is moving. On bends, or poor road surfaces or weather conditions, emergency braking can cause the vehicle to skid out of control or off the road.

If you apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, the brake system warning lamp will illuminate and a warning chime will sound. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

If your vehicle speed is above 4 mph (6 km/h), the braking force is applied as long as the switch is pulled. Releasing or pressing the switch or pressing the accelerator pedal will stop the braking force.

Releasing the Electric Parking Brake



E147231

You can release the electric parking brake either manually by pressing the switch or automatically.

Manual release

WARNING



If the brake system warning light remains illuminated or flashes after you have released the parking brake, there could be a problem with your braking system. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

You can manually release the electric parking brake by:

1. Turning the ignition on.
2. Pressing the brake pedal.
3. Pressing the electric parking brake switch.

When the electric parking brake is released, the brake system warning lamp will turn off.

Automatic release - drive away release

Your vehicle will automatically release the parking brake if all of the following conditions exist:

- The driver door is closed.
- The driver safety belt is fastened.
- The vehicle is accelerated.
- There are no faults detected in the parking brake system.

Note: If the electric parking brake warning lamp stays illuminated, the electric parking brake will not automatically release. You must release the electric parking brake using the electric parking brake switch.

Note: On manual transmission vehicles, if the transmission is in neutral (N) when you release the clutch pedal and press the accelerator pedal, the electric parking brake will release automatically.

Brakes

Note: On manual transmission vehicles, you must fully press the clutch pedal before the drive away release feature will operate. Drive as normal using the accelerator and clutch pedals and the electric parking brake will be automatically released.

The brake system warning lamp will go off to confirm that the electric parking brake has been released.

Note: The electric parking brake drive away release makes starting on a hill easier. This feature will release the parking brake automatically when the vehicle has sufficient drive force to move up the hill. To assure drive away release when starting uphill, press the accelerator pedal quickly.

Driving with a Trailer

Depending on the slope and the weight of the trailer, your vehicle and trailer may roll backwards slightly when you start on a slope.

To prevent this from happening, do the following:

1. Pull the switch up and hold it in this position.
2. Drive your vehicle, then release the switch when you notice that the engine has developed sufficient driving force.

Battery With No Charge

WARNING



You will not be able to apply or release the electric parking brake if the battery is low or has no charge.

If the battery is low or has no charge, use jumper cables and a booster battery.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake. Failure to leave your vehicle securely parked may lead to a crash or injury. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 169).



You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle remains stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The system releases the brakes automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

Note: The system only functions when you bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) when facing downhill and first gear (1) when facing uphill.

Note: *There is no warning light to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system activates automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for about two to three seconds. This hold time automatically extends if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes automatically.

Note: *When you remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the pedal again when the system is active, you will experience significantly reduced brake pedal travel. This is normal.*

Switching the System On and Off

For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, you can turn the system on or off in the instrument display. The system will remember your setting even when you turn your vehicle off and back on.

Note: *For vehicles with an automatic transmission, the system cannot be switched off.*

Traction Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

In certain situations for example, stuck in snow or mud, turning the traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power. Depending on the type of system you have on your vehicle, you can either turn the system off using the information display or by pressing the button.

Switching the System Off Using the Information Display Controls

(If Equipped)

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See (page 87).

Switching the System Off Using a Switch (If Equipped)

The button is located in the instrument panel.

Press the button. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the button again to return the system to normal mode.

When you switch the traction control system off, stability control remains fully active.

System Indicator Lights and Messages

WARNING



If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac system was not manually disabled through the information display. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The stability control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates the stability system.




The stability control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you turn the traction control system off.


When you turn the traction control system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

Stability Control

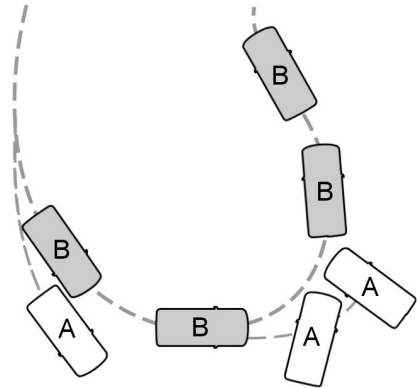
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

 Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

 Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac system activates, SLOW DOWN.

handling in following the road during adverse maneuvering, roll stability control helps avoid a vehicle rollover, and the traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction. See **Using Traction Control** (page 173).



E72903

- A Vehicle without AdvanceTrac with RSC skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with AdvanceTrac with RSC maintaining control on a slippery surface.

The AdvanceTrac with Roll Stability Control system helps you keep control of your vehicle when on a slippery surface. The electronic stability control portion of the system helps avoid skids and lateral slides, curve control assists in vehicle

Stability Control

USING STABILITY CONTROL

AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®)

The system automatically activates when you start your vehicle. The AdvanceTrac with RSC system cannot be completely turned off, but the electronic stability control and roll stability control portions of the system are disabled when the transmission is in reverse (R). You can also turn off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 173).

Parking Aids

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS



To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, surrounding vehicle's parking aid systems, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.



To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.



Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

Note: *The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See (page 37).*

Note: *If you attach certain add-on devices such as a trailer or bike rack, the rear sensing system may detect that add-on device and therefore provide warnings. It is suggested that you disable the rear sensing system when you attach an add-on device to your vehicle to prevent these warnings.*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.

The system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See (page 87).

Note: *On vehicles with front parking aid you can use the parking aid switch to switch the system off.*

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

REAR PARKING AID

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects a stationary or receding object farther than 12 in (30 cm) from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.

Parking Aids



E130178

Coverage area of up to 6 ft (1.8 m) from the rear bumper. There may be decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R) :

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away from the bumper.

Obstacle Distance Indicator (if Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. The distance indicator displays when the transmission is in reverse (R).

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

FRONT PARKING AID

The front sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P).



E187330

Coverage area of up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

When your vehicle approaches an object, a warning tone sounds. When your vehicle moves closer to an object, the warning tone repeat rate increases. The warning tone sounds continuously when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.

Obstacle Distance Indicator (if Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display.

Parking Aids

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the front sensing system provides audio warnings when your vehicle is moving and the detected obstacle is moving towards your vehicle. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear (for example, low (L), sport (S) or any forward gear in a manual transmission), the front sensing system provides audio and visual warnings when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 7 mph (12 km/h) and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds and the visual indication stops after 4 seconds. If the obstacles detected are within 12 in (30 cm), the visual indication remains on.

If the transmission is in neutral (N), the system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving at 7 mph (12 km/h) or below and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once your vehicle is stationary, the visual indication will stop after 4 seconds.

Note: Obstacles that enter the side detection area without being detected and mapped by the front or rear side sensors will not be detected.

The side sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P).



E187810

Coverage area is up to 24 in (60 cm) from the sides of your vehicle.

When the system detects an object close to the side of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As the object comes closer to the side of your vehicle, the rate of the audible warning increases. The rate of the audible warning varies depending on whether the obstacle is inside or outside of the driving path of your vehicle.

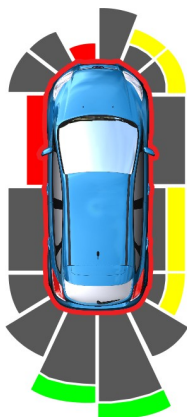
SIDE SENSING SYSTEM

The side sensing system uses the front and rear side sensors to detect and map obstacles that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

Obstacle Distance Indicator (if

Equipped)



E190459

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display.

As the distance to the obstacle decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon. If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks show greyed out.

When you shift to reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible and visual distance indication when your vehicle is moving and obstacles are detected within 12 in (30 cm), or when obstacles are detected within 12–24 in (30–60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle the audible warning stops after two seconds.

Note: *Visual distance indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

When you shift to drive (D) or any other forward gear, for example, low (L), sport (S) or any forward gear in manual transmission, the side sensing system provides audible and visual distance indication when your vehicle is moving at

7 mph (12 km/h) or below and obstacles are detected within 12 in (30 cm), or when obstacles are detected within 12–24 in (30–60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle the audible warning stops after 2 seconds and the visual distance indication stops after 4 seconds.

Note: *If the obstacle remains within 12 in (30 cm) visual distance indication remains on.*

If the transmission is in neutral (N), the side sensing system only provides visual distance indication when your vehicle is moving at 7 mph (12 km/h) or below, for example when moving on a slope, and obstacles are detected within 12 in (30 cm). When you stop your vehicle the visual distance indication stops after 4 seconds.

If the side sensing system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks will not be present.

The side sensing system is not available under the following condition:

- If you switch the traction control system off.

The side sensing system may not be available until you have driven approximately the length of your vehicle in order for the system to reinitialize if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system is activated.
- The traction control system is activated.

Parking Aids

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Parallel Parking, Perpendicular Parking, Park Out Assist

WARNINGS



You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. You are responsible at all times for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

Note: *The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required by grabbing the steering wheel or pushing the active park assist button.*

The system detects an available parallel or perpendicular parking space and automatically steers your vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you to park your vehicle.

If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system.

Park Out Assist automatically steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you to enter traffic.

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not detect traffic alongside or behind your vehicle during a park assist maneuver.*

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- You use a spare tire or a tire significantly worn more than the other tires.
- You use an unauthorized tire size.
- You try to park on a tight curve.
- Something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist).
- The edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).
- The weather conditions are poor (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc).

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Covered sensors can affect the system's accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves or cause ultrasonic interference (motorcycle exhaust, truck air brakes or horns).*

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached a foreign object (bike rack or trailer) to the front or rear of your vehicle or close to the sensors.
- You have attached an overhanging object (surfboard) to the roof.
- A foreign object damages or obstructs the front or rear bumper or side sensors.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle (for example, a mini-spare tire).

Using Active Park Assist - Parallel Parking

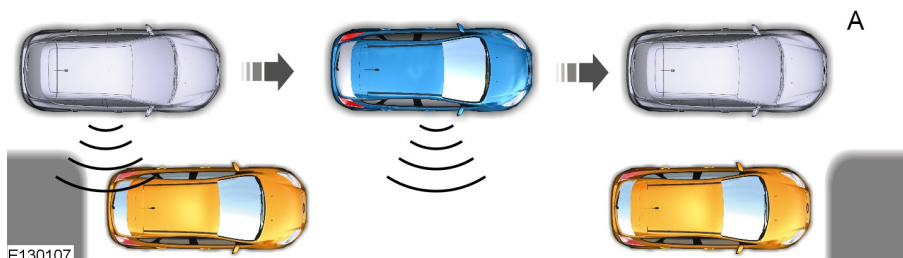


Press the button located on the center console near the gearshift lever or the right side of the center stack once.

Parking Aids

When driving at a speed less than 22 mph (35 km/h) the system automatically scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. The system displays a message and a corresponding graphic to

indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to select searching either to the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.



Note: If the direction indicators are not used, the system defaults to the passenger side of your vehicle.

Note: The system passively searches for parking spaces prior to pressing the button, so activating the system is still possible while passing a parking space.

When the system finds a suitable space, it displays a message and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the instructions on the screen. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may need to pull forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.

Note: Active park assist may not detect street furniture and other items. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.

Note: You should drive your vehicle within 5 ft (1.5 m) and as parallel as possible to the other vehicles while passing a parking space.

Note: The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).

Note: If driven above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h), the system shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.

Automatic Steering into Parking Space

Note: If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (9 km/h) or the maneuver is interrupted (driver input), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.

When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space.

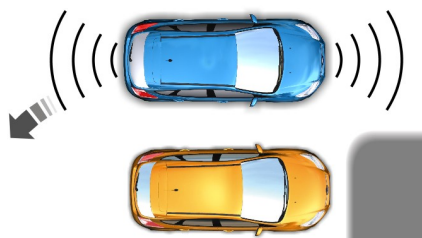
Parking Aids



E130108

When you think your vehicle is properly parked, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When automatic steering is complete, the system displays a message and a tone sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is finished. You are responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.



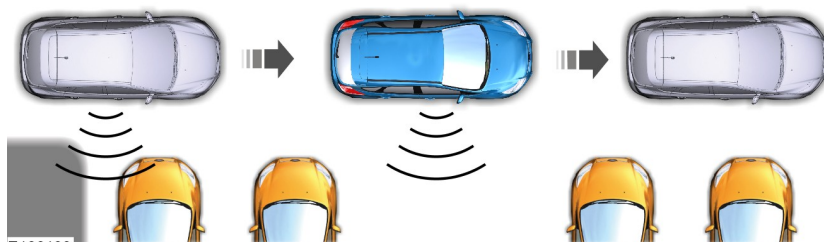
Using Active Park Assist - Perpendicular Parking



Press the button located on the center console near the gearshift lever or the right side of the center stack twice.

The system displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to select searching either to the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

Note: If you do not make a selection the system will default to the passenger's side.



E186193

When the system finds a suitable space, it displays a message and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the instructions on the screen. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may need to pull forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.

Note: You should drive your vehicle within 4.9 ft (1.5 m) and as perpendicular as possible to the other vehicles while passing a parking space.

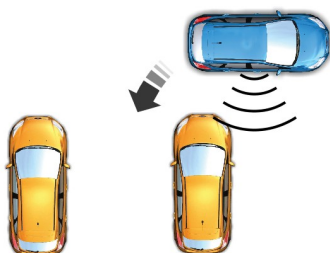
Parking Aids

Note: The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).

Note: If driven above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h), the system shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.

Automatic Steering into Parking Space

Note: If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (9 km/h) or the maneuver is interrupted (driver input), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.



When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space.

When you think your vehicle is properly parked, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

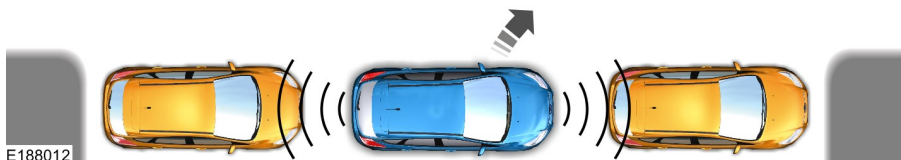
When automatic steering is complete, the system displays a message and a tone sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is finished. You are responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

Using Active Park Assist - Park Out Assist



While your vehicle is at rest in a parallel parking space, press the active park assist button.

The system displays a message requesting an indication of direction. Use the direction indicator to signal which side of your vehicle you want to exit the parking space.



Parking Aids

The system determines the clearance to the front and rear of your vehicle and automatically steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you to enter traffic.

After the system has directed your vehicle past the adjacent vehicle or object, it guides you to take control of the steering to complete the exit from the parking spot.

The system may not function correctly if something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist) or if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).

Note: *If the clearance in front of your vehicle allows easy departure, the Park Out Assist feature might not be available.*

Note: *You are responsible for controlling your vehicle and making sure the path is clear prior to pulling into traffic.*

Note: *This system is not intended to assist in exiting perpendicular parking spaces, damages to your vehicle may occur.*

Note: *If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (9 km/h) or the maneuver is interrupted (driver input), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.*

Deactivating the Active Park Assist Feature

Manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the active park assist button twice.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds during an active park search.
- Driving above 6 mph (9 km/h) during automatic steering.
- Switching off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message displays accompanied by a tone. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

Troubleshooting the System

The system does not look for a space
The traction control system may be off.
The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

Parking Aids

The system does not offer a particular space

The sensors may be covered (for example, snow, ice or dirt buildup). Covered sensors can affect the system's functionality.

There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.

There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.

The parking space is farther than 5 ft (1.5 m) or closer than 16 in (0.4 m) away.

The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

Your vehicle is going faster than 22 mph (35 km/h) for parallel and 19 mph (30 km/h) for perpendicular parking.

The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space

Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (rolling forward with reverse [R] selected).

An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning your vehicle properly.

Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly.

You pulled your vehicle too far past the parking space. The system performs best when you drive the same distance past the parking space.

The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes).

A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities.

A parked vehicle has a high attachment (salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed).


The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed.


The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash).


Parking Aids


REAR VIEW CAMERA (If Equipped)


WARNINGS

 The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

 Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

 Use caution when using the rear video camera and the luggage compartment door is ajar. If the luggage compartment door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the luggage compartment door is ajar.

 Use caution when turning camera features on or off. Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E142435

The camera is located on the luggage compartment door.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment door or liftgate is open, no rear view camera features will display.*

Parking Aids

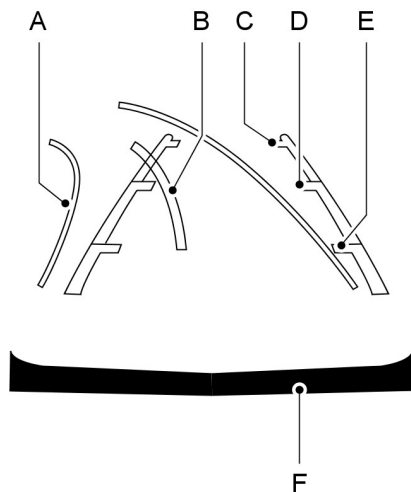
Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Camera Guidelines

Note: Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



E142436

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Parking Aids

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING



When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Camera System Settings

To access any of the rear view camera system settings, make the following selections in the multifunctional display when the transmission is not in reverse (R):

Main Menu
Settings
Vehicle
Camera Settings

Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

Cruise Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

USING CRUISE CONTROL (If

Equipped)

WARNINGS



Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays.



E191232

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release the cruise control icon.



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster.

Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: The indicator will change color.

Note: Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set speed while driving uphill.

Changing the Set Speed

- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. The set speed will change in approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) increments.

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release **CNCL**. You will not erase the set speed.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.

Switching Cruise Control Off


Press and release the cruise control icon, when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.


Cruise Control


Note: You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.


USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (If Equipped)


WARNINGS


 Always pay close attention to changing road conditions when using adaptive cruise control. The system does not replace attentive driving. Failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.


 Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.


 Adaptive cruise control does not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

 Adaptive cruise control does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.


 Adaptive cruise control does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

 Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

 Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

 Do not use the system when towing a trailer with brake controls. Aftermarket trailer brakes will not operate when you switch the system on because the brakes are electronically controlled. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

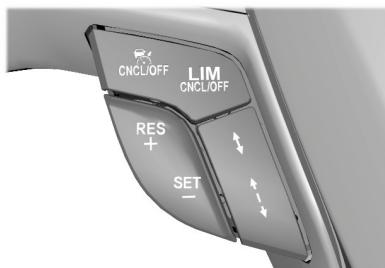
WARNINGS

 Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

Note: It is your responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.

The system is designed to help you maintain a gap from the vehicle in front of you. If there is no vehicle in front of you the system will maintain a set speed. The system is intended to provide enhanced operation of your vehicle when following other vehicles which are in the same lane and traveling in the same direction. You can select from one of four gap settings.

The system is based on the use of a radar sensor which projects a beam directly forward of your vehicle.



E184571

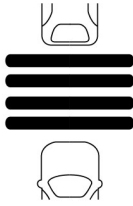
The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching the System On

Press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CNCLOFF** button.



Cruise Control

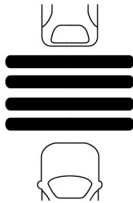


E164805

The cruise control indicator, **SET mph (kph)**, the current gap setting indicator and **Standby** displays in the instrument cluster.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET-** or **RES+**.
3. The information display shows a green indicator light, current gap setting and desired set speed.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



E164805

5. When the system detects a vehicle in front of you, it will be displayed above the horizontal bars.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the set speed displayed in the information display may vary slightly from the speedometer.

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET-** or **RES+**. The set speed changes in 5 mph (5 km/h) increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET-** or **RES+**.
- Press and hold **SET-** or **RES+**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal for an extended period, or press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CNCL/OFF** button. The last set speed displays with a strikethrough.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES+**. The vehicle returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display while the system is active.

Switching the System Off

Press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CNCL/OFF** button when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

Cruise Control

Following a Vehicle

WARNINGS



When following a vehicle, your vehicle does not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.



Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap.

The lead vehicle graphic illuminates.

Your vehicle maintains a constant gap behind the vehicle ahead until:

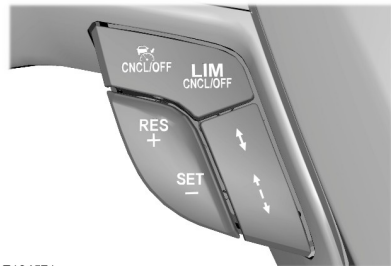
- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of your lane or out of view.
- The vehicle speed falls below 12 mph (20 km/h).
- A new gap is set.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap from the vehicle in front. The maximum braking which the system can apply is limited. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system predicts that its maximum braking level is insufficient, an audible warning sounds while the system continues to brake. The red warning bar appears on the windshield. You should take immediate action.

Note: The brakes may emit a sound when modulated by the adaptive cruise control system.

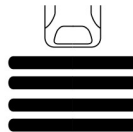
Setting the Gap



E184571

You can decrease or increase the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you by pressing the gap control.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the graphic. You can select from one of four gap settings.

Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance will automatically adjust with your speed.

Cruise Control

Adaptive cruise control gap settings

Set speed mph (km/h)	Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles	Time gap, seconds	Gap yd (m)	Dynamic beha- vior
62 (100)	1	1	31 (28)	Sport
62 (100)	2	1.4	43 (39)	Normal
62 (100)	3	1.8	55 (50)	Normal
62 (100)	4	2.2	67 (61)	Comfort

Note: The system status and settings will remain unchanged each time you switch the ignition on.

Overriding the System

WARNING



Whenever the driver is overriding the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, the system does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

You can override the set speed and gap by pressing the accelerator pedal.



When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the lead vehicle graphic does not show in the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Automatic Cancellation

The system does not operate below 12 mph (20 km/h). An audible warning sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: If the engine speed drops too low, the information display indicates low engine speed. Shift to a lower gear (manual transmission only) to avoid automatic cancellation.

Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear position when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent them from overheating.

Note: An audible warning sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool down. The system functions normally again when the brakes have cooled down.

Cruise Control

Detection Issues

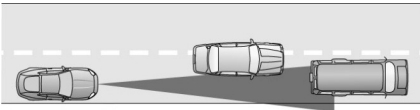
WARNING



On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

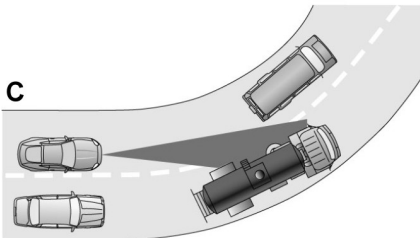
A



B



C



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

- A With vehicles that edge into your lane that can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane.
- B Motorcyclists may be detected late, or not at all.
- C With vehicles in front of you when going into and coming out of a bend. The detection beam will not follow sharp curves in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

If something hits the front of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

Blocked Sensor



E145632

Cruise Control

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is located on the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something

obstructs the radar signals.

Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors and aftermarket lights may also block the sensor.

The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message displaying.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Swirling water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.

It is possible to get a blockage warning and not be blocked. A false blocked condition self clears or clears after a key cycle.

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING



Normal cruise control does not brake due to slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.



The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles and automatic braking does not activate. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

You can manually change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.

SPEED LIMITER (If Equipped)

Principle of Operation

WARNING



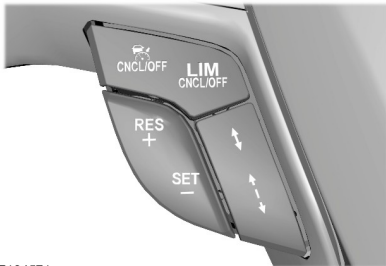
When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning will be given.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

Using the System

Note: *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.*

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.



E184571

Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM CNCL/OFF to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display will prompt you to set a speed. Press LIM CNCL/OFF with the limiter in standby mode to turn the system OFF.

Manual Setting the Speed Limit

- Press SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed.
- Press RES+ or SET- to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- Press LIM CNCL/OFF to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will show the set speed greyed out.
- Press RES+ to resume the limiter. The information display will show the set speed.

Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily turn the system off. The system will reactivate once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

System Warnings

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display will flash and you will hear an audible warning chime.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display will flash.

Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter (If Equipped)

The system allows you to automatically limit your vehicle speed to the speed limit that is detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system.

You can change the speed limiter mode between manual and intelligent in the information display. See (page 87).

Driving Aids

You can select a permanent set speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display. See (page 87).

Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM CNCL/OFF to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display will prompt you to set a speed. Press LIM CNCL/OFF with the limiter in standby mode to turn the system OFF.

Setting the Speed Limit

- Press Res+ with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the detected speed limit.
- Press SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed.
- Press RES+ or SET- to gradually change the current set speed your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- Press LIM CNCL/OFF to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will show the set speed greyed out.
- Press RES+ to resume the limiter. The information display will show the set speed.
- The limit speed will automatically adapt to the speed limit detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system.

Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily turn the system off. The system will reactivate once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

System Warnings

If the set speed is automatically set to a lower value than your current vehicle speed, the set speed indicator in the information display will flash and you will hear an audible warning chime if you are continuously exceeding the set speed.

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display will flash and you will hear an audible warning chime.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display will flash.

DRIVER ALERT (If Equipped)

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING



The driver alert system is designed to aid you. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

Note: The system will store the on or off setting in the information display menu through ignition cycles.

Note: If enabled in the menu, the system will be active at speeds above 40 mph (64 km/h). When below the activation speed, the information display will inform the driver that the system is unavailable.

Note: The system works as long as one lane marking can be detected by the camera.

Note: If the camera is blocked or if the windshield is damaged, the system may not function.

Note: The system may not be available in poor weather or other low visibility conditions.

Driving Aids

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that your driving alertness is reduced below a certain threshold, the system will alert you using a chime and a message in the cluster display.

USING DRIVER ALERT

Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on or off using the information display. See (page 87).

When activated, the system will monitor your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings, and other factors.

System Warnings

Note: The system will not issue warnings below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h).

The warning system has two stages. At first, the system issues a temporary warning that you need to take a rest. This message will only appear for a short time. If the system detects further reduction in driving alertness, it may issue another warning that will remain in the information display for a longer time. You can press OK on the steering wheel control to clear the warning.

System Display

When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue a warning if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See (page 87).

The alertness level is shown by six steps in a colored bar.



E131358

The current assessment of your alertness is within a typical range.



E131359

The current assessment of your alertness indicates that you should rest as soon as safely possible.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow to red.

The yellow position indicates the first warning is active and the red position indicates the second warning is active.

Note: If you have recently received a warning; you should consider resting, even if the current assessment is within the typical range.

Note: If the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if your vehicle speed drops below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h), the alertness level will change to grey for a short time and the information display will inform you that the system is unavailable.

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by either:

Driving Aids

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (if

Equipped)

WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray can all limit sensor performance.



Large contrasts in lighting can limit sensor performance.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



The vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer for inspection if damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: The system works above 40 mph (64 km/h).

Note: The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.

Note: The system may not function if the camera is blocked or there is damage to the windshield.

Note: When Aid mode is on and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system will alert you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.

The system notifies you to stay in your lane through the steering system and the instrument cluster display when the front camera detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur. The system automatically detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior rear view mirror.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: The system on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey is detected. If the system detects a MyKey it defaults to on and the mode is set to Alert.

Note: If a MyKey is detected, pressing the button will not affect the on or off status of the system.



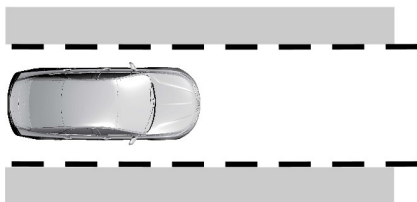
Press the button located on the left steering wheel stalk to switch the system on or off.

System Settings

The system has optional setting menus available. To view or adjust the settings, See **General Information** (page 87). The system stores the last-known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you turn on the system.

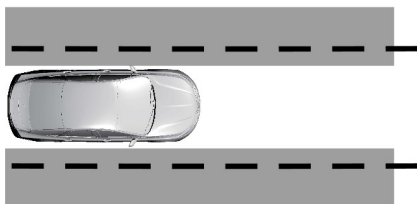
Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.

Driving Aids



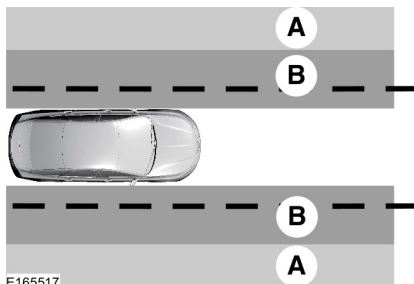
E165515

Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165516

Aid only – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165517

- | | |
|---|-------|
| A | Alert |
| B | Aid |

Alert + Aid – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

Note: The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. This setting does not affect the aid mode.

- Low
- Normal
- High

System Display



E151660

Driving Aids

When you switch on the system, an overhead graphic of a vehicle with lane markings will display in the information display. If you select aid mode when you switch on the system, a separate white icon will also appear or in some vehicles arrows will display with the lane markings.

When you switch off the system, the lane marking graphics will not display.

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings will change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s). This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The turn indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.

- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental conditions (significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog), traffic conditions (following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane), or vehicle conditions (poor headlamp illumination).

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the turn signal indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.

Troubleshooting

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature
Sun is shining directly into the camera lens
Quick intentional lane change
Staying too close to the lane marking
Driving at high speeds in curves
The last Alert warning or Aid intervention occurred a short time ago

Driving Aids

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
--

Ambiguous lane markings (mainly in construction zones)
Rapid transition from light to dark or vice versa
Sudden offset in lane markings
ABS or AdvanceTrac activation
Camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield
Driving too close to the vehicle in front of you
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa
Standing water on the road
Faint lane markings (partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads)
Lane width too narrow or too wide
Camera not calibrated after a windshield replacement
Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads


Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?

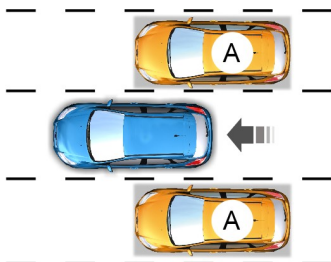
High cross winds
Large road crown
Rough roads, grooves, shoulder drop-offs
Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure
If the tires have been exchanged (including snow tires), or the suspension has been modified

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind Spot Information System (BLIS™) with Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

WARNING


 To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.



E124788

The Blind Spot Information System aids you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 23 ft (7 m) beyond the bumper. The system alerts you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

WARNING

 To help avoid personal injury, NEVER use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors and looking over your shoulder before backing out of a parking space. Cross traffic alert is not a replacement for careful driving.

Cross traffic alert warns you of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; nor does it detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails or trees). It only alerts you to vehicles in the blind zones.*

Note: *When a vehicle passes quickly through the blind zone, the system may not trigger.*

Using the Systems

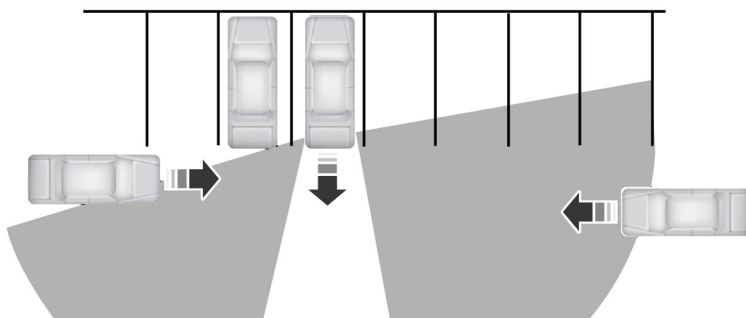
The Blind Spot Information System turns on when you start the engine and you drive your vehicle forward above 5 mph (8 km/h), it remains on while the transmission is in drive (D) or neutral (N). If shifted into reverse (R), the system enters cross traffic alert mode. Once shifted back into drive (D), the Blind Spot Information System turns back on when you drive your vehicle above 5 mph (8 km/h).

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not function in reverse (R) or park (P).*

Note: *Cross traffic alert detects approaching vehicles and bicycles from up to 131 ft (40 m) away though coverage decreases when the sensors are blocked. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

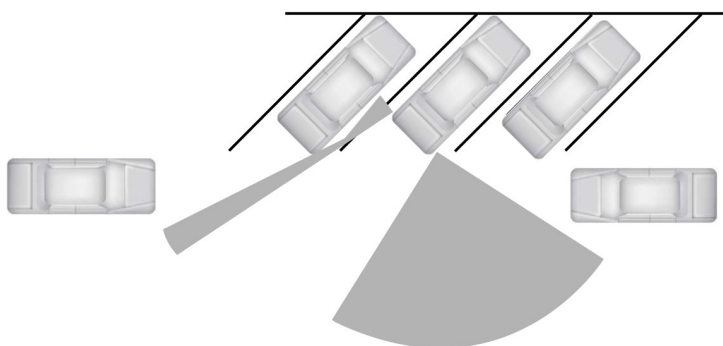
Driving Aids

Note: For manual transmission vehicles, the cross traffic alert will be active only if the transmission is in reverse (R). If your vehicle is rolling backward and the transmission is not in reverse (R) then cross traffic alert will not be active.



E142440

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage is nearly maximized.



E142441

Driving Aids

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.

System Lights and Messages



E142442

The Blind Spot Information and cross traffic alert systems illuminate a yellow alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from. In addition, the yellow alert indicator will flash if the direction indicator is ON while a Blind Spot Warning System alert is active.

Cross traffic alert also sounds a series of tones and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left.

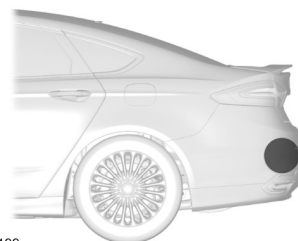
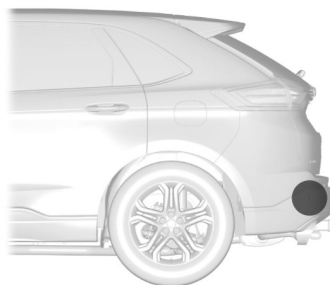
System Sensors

WARNING



Just prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and alerting the driver, the number of missed objects will increase. To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.

Note: It is possible to get a blockage warning with no blockage present; this is rare and known as a false blockage warning. A false blocked condition either self-corrects or clears after a key cycle.



E205199

The system uses radar sensors which are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Do not allow mud, snow or bumper stickers to obstruct these areas, this can cause degraded system performance.

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor or low visibility will appear in the information display along with a warning indicator. You can clear the information display warning but the warning indicator will remain illuminated.

Driving Aids

When you remove a blockage, you can reset the system in two ways:

- While driving, the system detects at least two objects.
- You cycle the ignition from on to off and then back on.

If the blockage is still present after the key cycle and driving in traffic, check again for a blockage.

Reasons for messages being displayed	
The radar surface is dirty or obstructed	Clean the fascia area in front of the radar or remove the obstruction.
The radar surface is not dirty or obstructed	Drive normally in traffic for a few minutes to allow the radar to detect passing vehicles so it can clear the blocked state.
Heavy rain-fall or snowfall interferes with the radar signals	No action required. The system automatically resets to an unblocked state once the rainfall or snowfall rate decreases or stops. Do not use the Blind Spot Information System or cross traffic alert in these conditions.

System Limitations

The Blind Spot Information and cross traffic alert systems do have their limitations; situations such as severe weather conditions or debris build-up on the sensor area may limit vehicle detection.

The following are other situations that may limit the Blind Spot Information System:

- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at very quickly.
- When several vehicles closely following each other pass through the blind zone.

The following are other situations that may limit the cross traffic alert system:

- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- Driving in reverse faster than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

False Alerts

Note: *If your vehicle has a factory equipped tow bar and it is towing a trailer, the sensors will detect the trailer and turn the Blind Spot Information and cross traffic alert systems off to avoid false alerts. For non-factory equipped tow bars, you may want to switch the Blind Spot Information System off manually.*

There may be certain instances when there is a false alert by either the Blind Spot Information or the cross traffic alert system that illuminates the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

System Errors

If either system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the Blind Spot Information System telltale will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display.

All other system faults will display only with a message in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Switching the Systems Off and On

You can temporarily switch off one or both systems in the information display. See **General Information** (page 87). When you switch off the Blind Spot Information System, you will not receive alerts and the information display shows a system off message.

Note: The cross traffic alert system always turns on whenever the ignition is switched on. However, the Blind Spot Information System will remember the last selected on or off setting.

You cannot switch one or both systems off when MyKey is used. See **Principle of Operation** (page 37).

You can also have one or both systems switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off, only an authorized dealer can switch the system back on.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.

Note: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

Note: Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

Note: Always fit Ford original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

Note: Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

Note: The system may not detect all traffic signs and may read signs incorrectly.

Note: The system is designed to automatically detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.

Note: Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

There is a sensor mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors road signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations.

The system automatically detects recognisable traffic signs, such as:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.

When the system recognises a traffic sign, it will be shown in the display.

Using the System

Switching the System On and Off

Note: The system status and settings will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).

Setting the System Speed Warning

The system has a number of speed warning levels which can be set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).

System Display



E132994

The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system display is in four stages as follows:


1. All new recognizable traffic signs will appear brighter than the other traffic signs in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they will be shown normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they will be shown greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they will be deleted.


If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, this sign is indicated as a box below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.


If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.


PRE-COLLISION ASSIST


WARNINGS


 You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 To achieve full system performance you must break in the braking system. See **General Information** (page 168). Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 The system does not react to cyclists, animals, pedestrians at night, or vehicles that are driving in a different direction. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


 The system does not operate during harsh acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

 The system may or may not operate or may operate with reduced function during cold or severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can influence the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 System performance may reduce in situations where the camera's detection capability is limited. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex

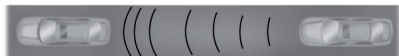
WARNINGS

backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians which cannot be distinguished from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 The system cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain distance and speed.

Using the Pre-Collision Assist System

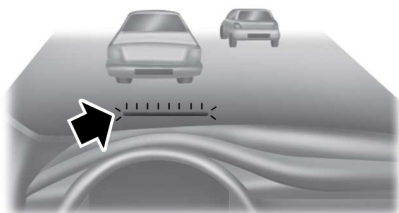
The Pre-Collision Assist system is active at speeds above approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).



E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality:

1. Alert
2. Brake Support
3. Active Braking



E156131

Alert: When activated, a red warning light flashes, an audible warning chime sounds and a warning message shows in the information display.

Brake Support: The brake support system assists the driver in reducing the collision speed by lightly applying the brakes. If the risk of collision further increases after the warning light illuminates, the brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking. This may be apparent to the driver. The system does not automatically activate the brakes, but if you press the brake pedal, the system may apply full force, even if the brake pedal is lightly pressed.

Active Braking: Active braking may apply if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help the driver reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.

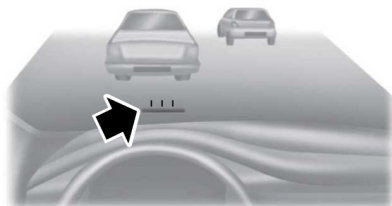
Note: *If you perceive Pre-Collision Assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings.*

Distance Alert

If the distance to the lead vehicle is small, the red warning light illuminates in the windshield.

Note: *The red light bar is smaller and does not flash when Distance Alert is active.*

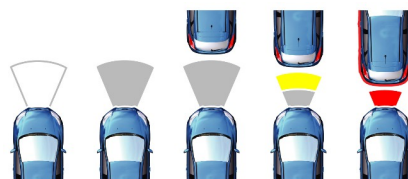
Driving Aids



E184570

Distance Indication

Distance indication is a function that provides a graphical indication of the time gap to other vehicles traveling in the same direction.



E190004

Note: Distance Alert and Distance Indication deactivates when adaptive cruise control is active. The distance indication graphics do not display in the information display unless adaptive cruise control is OFF.

Speed	Sensitivity	Graphics	Distance Gap	Time Gap
62mph (100km/h)	Normal	Grey	>25m	>0.9sec
62mph (100km/h)	Normal	Yellow	between 17m and 25m	between 0.6sec and 0.9sec
62mph (100km/h)	Normal	Red	<17m	<0.6sec

Adjusting Pre-Collision Assist Settings

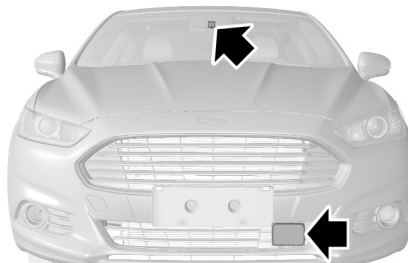
You can adjust the Alert and Distance Alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings by using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 87).

You can switch the distance alert and indication function off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 87).

If required, you can switch active braking off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 87).

Note: Active braking automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.

Blocked Sensors



E184569

Driving Aids

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, the radar signals or camera images are obstructed. The radar sensor is located behind a fascia cover near the driver side of the lower grille. With an obstructed radar, the Pre-Collision Assist system does not function and cannot detect a vehicle

ahead. With the front camera obstructed, the Pre-Collision Assist system does not respond to pedestrians or stationary vehicles and the system performance on moving vehicles reduces. The following table lists possible causes and actions for when this message displays.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-Collision Assist should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-Collision Assist should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

Note: Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view repaired.

Note: If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Driving Aids

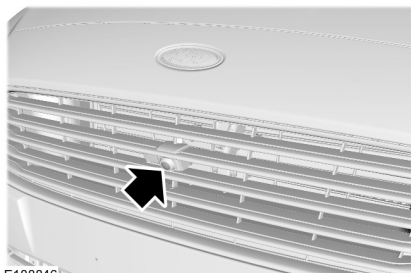
Note: If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message may display in the information display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. This message deactivates automatically when operational conditions are corrected (for example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor automatically recalibrates successfully).

FRONT VIEW CAMERA

WARNING



The camera system is a supplement system that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out the windows and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



The front view camera is located in the grille.

Using the Front View Camera

The front view camera provides an image of the area in front of your vehicle.

To use the front video camera system, place the transmission in any gear except reverse (R). An image of the front of your vehicle appears once you press the camera enable button and your vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).

Note: The area displayed on the screen may vary according to your vehicle's orientation or road condition.

Note: The front view camera will switch off if your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h). You will have to switch the system back on by using the enable button once below the speed threshold.



The camera button is located on the audio unit.

Camera Views

Press the camera button to toggle between different views.

- Front Normal View: Provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.
- Front Split View: Provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle. Access this view by pressing the camera button from the Front Normal View screen.

DRIVE CONTROL

Driver Select Suspension

Driver select suspension delivers a unique driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems continuously monitor your driving inputs and the road conditions to optimize ride comfort, steering and handling.

Driver select suspension consists of the following systems:

- Continuously controlled damping dynamically adjusts the shock absorbers stiffness in real time to match the road surface and driver inputs. This system continuously monitors your vehicle's motion (roll, pitch, bounce), suspension position, load, speed, road conditions, and steering to adjust the suspension damping for optimal vehicle control.
- Electronically power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on your vehicle speed and your inputs.

You can configure which of the modes are active when your vehicle is in (D) drive or in (S) sport. The configuration remains active until modified from the main menu on the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).

Modes:

- Comfort – Provides a more relaxed driving experience, maximizing comfort. Your steering effort decreases and the suspension movement is more fluid. Comfort mode is ideal when you desire enhanced traveling comfort.
- Normal – Delivers a balanced combination of comfortable, controlled ride and confident handling. This mode provides an engaging drive experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from your vehicle.
- Sport – Provides a sportier driving experience. The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control. The engine responds more directly to your inputs. Sport mode is ideal for use during more spirited driving.

Adaptive Steering

You can configure which of the modes are active when your vehicle is in (D) drive or in (S) sport. The configuration remains active until modified from the main menu on the information display. See **General Information** (page 87).

Modes:







- Normal – Default factory setting.
- Sport – Slightly higher effort required for steering with more road force felt through the steering wheel.

Note: *The Drive Control has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. Certain types of system errors will gray out the mode selections within the information display, preventing you from changing states when the gear position is changed. Other types of errors will produce a temporary message that states a malfunction. If either condition persists for multiple key cycles, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Load Carrying

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

-  Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.
-  Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.
-  Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.
-  Do not drive with the luggage compartment or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.
-  Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 284).
-  Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

Note: When loading long objects in to your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

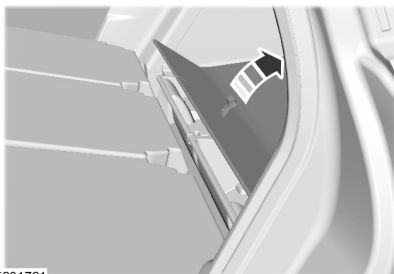
LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



E202759

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

In-Floor Storage - Second Row

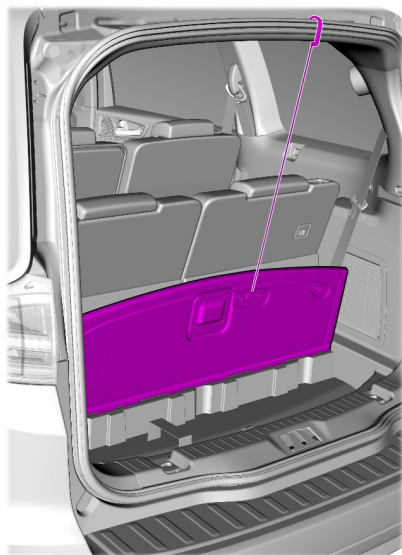


E201721

In-floor storage is located behind the second row of seats in the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

Load Carrying

Load Floor Storage (If Equipped)



E203774

Raise the loadspace floor to gain access to the storage compartment.

CARGO NETS

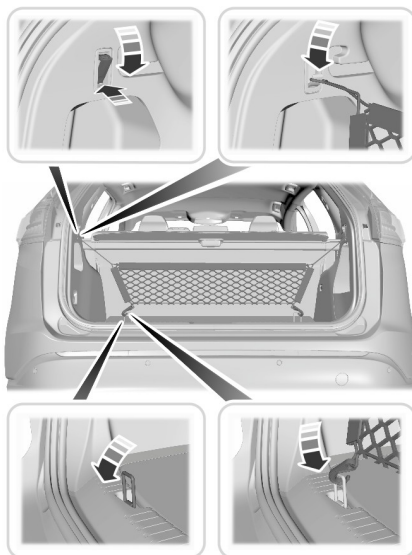
WARNING



This net is not designed to restrain objects during a collision or heavy braking.

Cargo Net - Cargo Floor Net (If Equipped)

The cargo net secures lightweight objects in the cargo area. Attach the net to the anchors provided. Repeat the attachment on both sides of the vehicle.



E199571

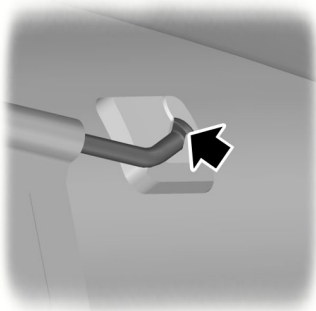
Cargo Net - Loadnet (If Equipped)

Note: The cargo net can only be placed behind the second row seat.

The cargo net cannot be used in conjunction with a tonneau cover.

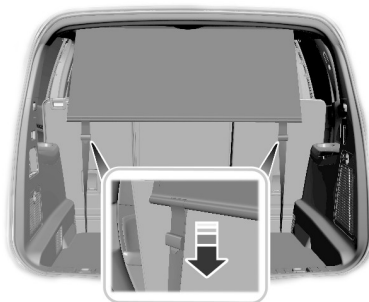
Load Carrying

Installing the net



E87052

1. Push the ends of the upper bar toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the headliner. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.



E203022

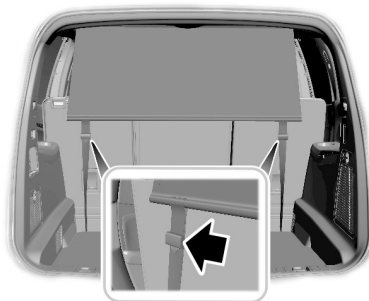
3. Tighten the belts.

Removing the net



E203021

2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 214).




E203020


1. Release the belts.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

Load Carrying

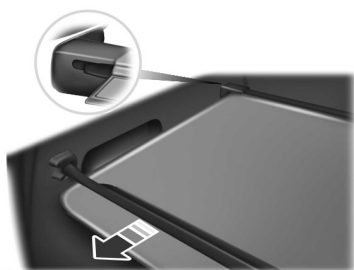
LUGGAGE COVERS

WARNINGS

 Make sure that the posts are properly latched in mounting features. The cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or accident if it is not securely installed.

 Do not place any objects on the cargo area shade. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of your vehicle in a sudden stop or crash.

Use the cargo shade to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.



E142447


Insert the ends of the cargo shade into the mounting features located behind the rear seat on the rear trim panels to install the cargo shade.


To operate the cargo shade:


1. Pull the rear edge of the cargo shade rearward.
2. Secure both ends of the support rod into the retention slots located on the rear quarter trim panels.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

WARNINGS

 If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

 Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

 When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack, is:

- 165 pounds (75 kilograms) for vehicles without a moonroof
- 132 pounds (60 kilograms) for vehicles with a moonroof.

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

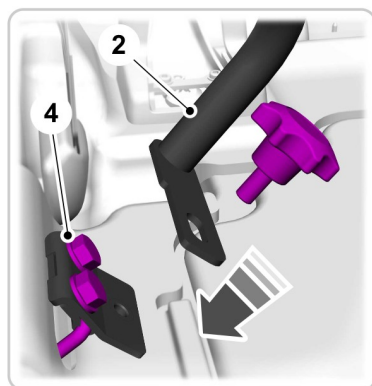
Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Load Carrying

Towbar Carriers

When using a towbar attached carrier, consider the following:

- Do not exceed the maximum vertical weight on the towball (weight of the carrier plus weight of the load).
- Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.
- If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum number of allowed bikes is three, with a maximum allowed weight of 130 lb (60 kg).
- Load the heaviest item closest to the vehicle.



DOG GUARD

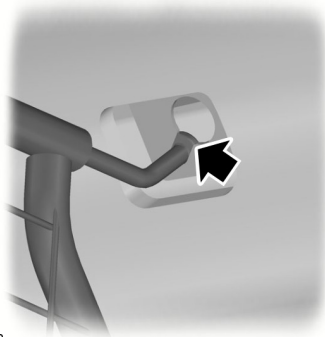
WARNING



Leave at least 0.4 in (1 cm) space between the dog guard and the seats in front of it.



Installing behind the front seats

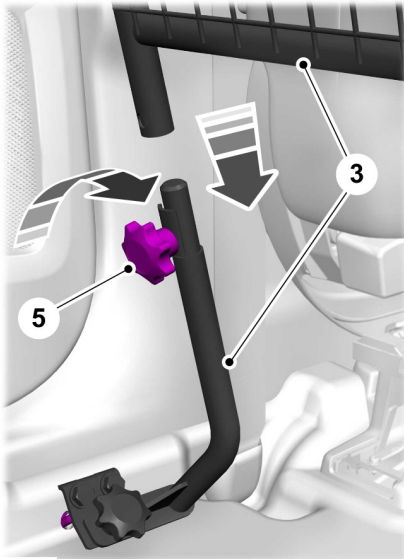


E86848

1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.

2. Attach the dog guard to the lower anchor points using the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.

Load Carrying



E200135

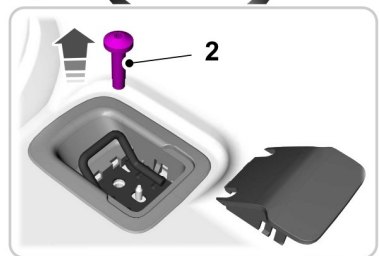
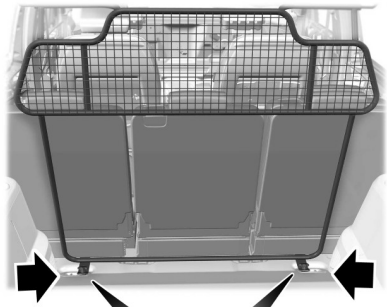
3. Attach the grille to the lower bar with the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
4. Tighten the handwheels at the lower anchor points.
5. Tighten the handwheels at the grille-lower bar attachment points.

Installing behind the rear seats



E86848

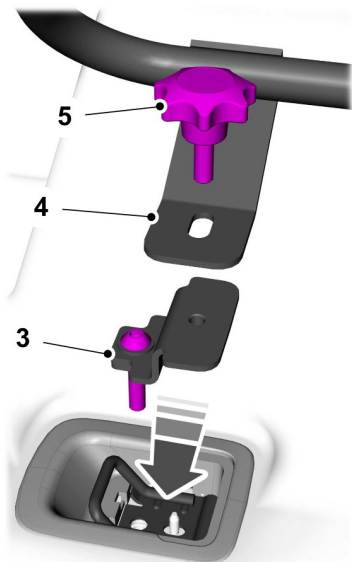
1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.



E200159

Load Carrying

2. Remove the screw from each of the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 214).



E200160

3. Attach the floor bracket to the luggage anchor point and secure with the new supplied screws.
4. Attach the dog guard lower bar bracket to the floor bracket with handwheel.
5. Tighten the handwheels.

Remove in the reverse order.

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS



Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h). This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on your vehicle identification plate. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 284).



Do not exceed the maximum permissible trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball) as stated in the vehicle specification chart. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 279).



The anti-lock braking system does not control the overrun brake on the trailer. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, place the load in your trailer toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 279).

- The trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball), is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 279).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 222).
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer nose weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer nose weight may be lower.*

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 3,280 ft (1,000 m) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions, the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 3,280 ft (1,000 m), you must reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every extra 3,280 ft (1,000 m).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 279). See **Load Carrying** (page 214).

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.*

TOW BALL

WARNINGS



An audible warning tone sounds when the tow ball arm is not in the fully stowed position or in proper towing position. If the audible warning tone does not sound when the tow ball arm moves or when the system switches on, do not use the tow bar. See an authorized dealer.

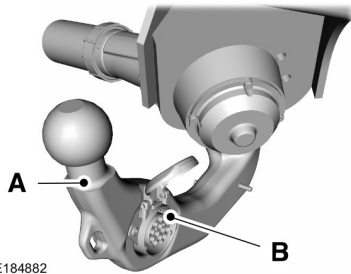


Do not touch the tow ball arm when it is moving.



Make sure there are no obstacles preventing the tow ball arm from moving.

Note: *We recommend keeping the tow ball arm in the stowed position when you are not using it. In addition, consider local regulations and insurance terms.*



- A Tow ball arm.
B 13-pin trailer socket.

Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm

Note: *Do not attach any plug to the 13-pin trailer socket.*

Note: *Make sure the vehicle battery has a full charge.*

Note: *The vehicle has to be stationary for the tow ball arm to operate.*

Note: *If something is blocking the tow ball arm during its swivel process, the system tries to reverse. If the tow ball arm stops before it is fully in towing position or stowed position, restart the swivel process by pressing the button twice.*

Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm Out

Note: *If the tow ball arm does not operate, but you hear an audible double tone (low pitch followed by a high pitch), switch on the ignition for 10 seconds, and then press the brake pedal and try operating the tow ball arm again.*

1. Press the button. An audible double tone (low pitch followed by a high pitch) sounds to let you know the system is operating.

Towing

2. Press the button again within four seconds to swivel the tow ball arm. A series of audible tones sounds and the LED flashes while the tow ball arm swivels.
3. When the tow ball arm finishes swiveling, the LED stops flashing and an audible double tone (high pitch followed by a low pitch) sounds.

The tow ball arm is ready for use when it finishes swiveling into the towing position.

Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm In

Before swiveling the tow ball arm in:

- Unhitch the trailer or dismantle load carriers and their attachments.
- Dismantle attachments for tracking stabilization.
- Remove the plug for the trailer power supply and the adapter from the trailer socket. Failure to do so may cause damage to the bumper when the tow ball arm swivels into its stowed position.

To start swiveling the tow ball arm in, press the swivel button twice within four seconds.

The tow ball arm swivels into the stowed position automatically.

Tow Ball Arm Fault Conditions

If the LED on the swivel button is rapidly flashing and an audible tone sequence (high pitch) sounds, repeat the swivel process. If this does not resolve the problem, see an authorized dealer.

A message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Driving with a Trailer

WARNINGS



In the event of a vehicle breakdown, disconnect the trailer before towing the vehicle.



If any of the conditions below cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician. Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked.

Check that:

- There is a last audible low pitch tone when the locking procedure finishes.
- The tow ball arm properly locks. Make sure it does not move when jerked.

Tow Ball Bike Carrier

Check the vertical weight on the tow ball. See **Load Carrying** (page 214).

Maintenance

Note: The towing hitch and control unit are maintenance-free. Do not grease or oil these components.


Note: Do not attempt to service the towing hitch. Only the manufacturer should carry out repairs or dismantle the hitch.

Note: When cleaning the vehicle with a steam jet, do not direct the high-pressure jet directly onto the swivel joint of the tow ball arm and socket. After cleaning the vehicle, unplug the connector or open the trailer socket to make sure no water entered. If water is present, dry the socket.

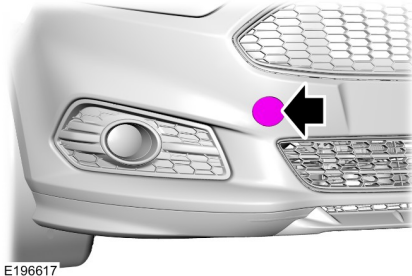
Towing

TOWING POINTS

WARNING

 The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

Front Towing Eye



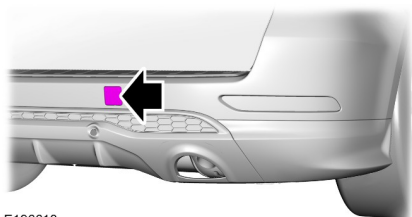
E196617

Space is provided in the under floor storage compartment behind the front seats.

You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

Remove the cover and install the towing eye.

Rear Towing Eye





E196618


Note: If your vehicle has a tow bar, you cannot install the towing eye at the rear of your vehicle. Use the tow bar to tow other vehicles.


TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION


WARNINGS

 You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 You must make sure the transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

 The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

 If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock, make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position before you tow.

 Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Emergency Towing

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. If the transmission gear shift lever cannot be moved to position **N**, it may need to be overridden. See **Transmission** (page 159).

Towing

- Maximum speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Note: *If you need to exceed a speed of 30 mph (50 km/h) and a distance of 50 mi (80 km) while towing, you must lift the drive wheels clear of the ground.*

Note: *We recommend you do not tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) or farther than 50 mi (80 km).*

WARNING



In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission, do not use individual axle carriers. All wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is being towed.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 224).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

Note: *Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.*

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS



You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.



When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 224).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Towing

Do not exceed 31 mph (50 km/h). See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 224).

Driving Hints

BREAKING-IN

Tires

WARNING



New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 miles (500 kilometers). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

WARNING



Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 miles (150 kilometers) in town and for the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers) on freeways.

Engine

WARNING



Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 2000 miles (3000 kilometers), you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

WARNING



Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and cause the engine to shut down completely.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 79).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine will continue to operate with limited power for a short time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will reduce. The air conditioning will switch off and the engine cooling fan will operate continually.

1. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Switch the engine off immediately to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 248).
5. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

The following will help to improve fuel consumption.

Tire Pressures

Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy. For best results use the economy pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 276).

Gear Shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions.

Driving Hints

Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles without the need for heavy braking or acceleration.

Efficient Speed

Higher speeds use more fuel. Reduce your cruising speed on open roads.

Accessories

Try not to add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.

Electrical Systems

Switch off all electrical systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13°F (-25°C).

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNING

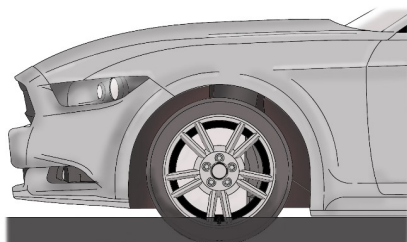


Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

Note: Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E 176360

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS




Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.





Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.


Driving Hints


WARNINGS


 Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

 Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

 Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

 Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

 Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

 Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.



E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Roadside Emergencies

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again to turn them off.

Note: *If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the hazard warning flashers may flash if you brake heavily.*

FIRST AID KIT

You can stow the first aid kit in the right-hand side rear storage compartment.

WARNING TRIANGLE

You can stow the warning triangle in the rear load floor storage compartment.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.




Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

Roadside Emergencies

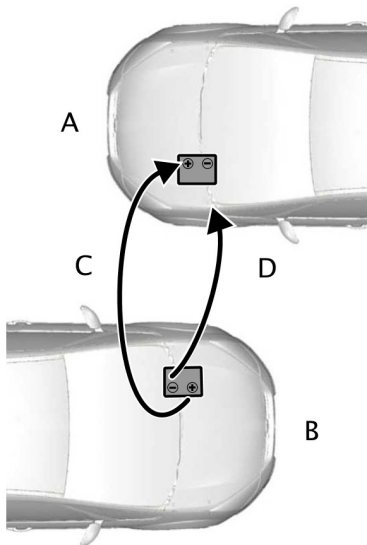
JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

-  Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.
-  Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.
-  Always use booster cables with insulated clamps and adequate size cable.

Note: Do not disconnect the battery from your vehicle's electrical system.

To Connect the Booster Cables

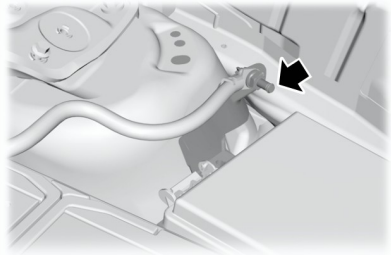


E102925

- A Flat battery vehicle
- B Booster battery vehicle

- C Positive connection cable
- D Negative connection cable



1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C).



E152134

4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground connection of vehicle A (cable D).

WARNINGS

-  Do not connect directly to the negative (-) terminal of the flat battery.
-  Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

To Start the Engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

Roadside Emergencies

WARNING



Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the direction indicator lamps in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The lamps turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button (if equipped) on the remote entry transmitter.
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

Fuses

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Power Distribution Box

WARNINGS



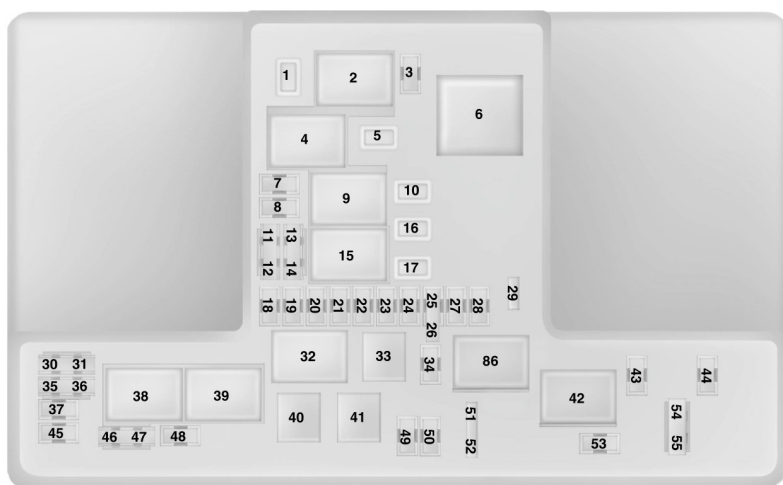
Always disconnect the battery before servicing high-current fuses.



To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, some features will need to be reset. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 250).



E190797

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	25A ³	Wiper motor.
2	-	Starter relay.
3	15A ¹	Rear wiper. Rain sensor

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
4	—	Blower motor relay.
5	20A ³	Power point 3 - Back of console.
6	—	Auxiliary heater #2 relay.
7	20A ¹	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 1.
8	20A ¹	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 2.
9	—	Powertrain control module relay.
10	20A ³	Power point 1 - driver front.
11	15A ²	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 4.
12	15A ²	Powertrain control module - vehicle power 3.
13	10A ²	Not used (spare).
14	10A ²	Not used (spare).
15	—	Run-start relay.
16	20A ³	Power point 2 - console.
17	20A ³	Power point 4 - luggage compartment.
18	10A ¹	Not used (spare).
19	10A ¹	Run-start electronic power assist steering.
20	10A ¹	Run/start lighting.
21	15A ¹	Run/start transmission control. Transmission oil pump start/stop.
22	10A ¹	Air conditioner clutch solenoid.
23	15A ¹	Run-start. Blind spot information system. Rear view camera. Adaptive cruise control.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
		Heads-up display. Voltage stability module.
24	10A ¹	Run-start 7.
25	10A ²	Run-start anti-lock brake system.
26	10A ²	Run-start powertrain control module.
27	—	Not used.
28	10A ¹	Rear washer pump.
29	—	Not used.
30	—	Not used.
31	—	Not used.
32	—	Electronic fan 1 relay.
33	—	A/C clutch relay.
34	15A ¹	Electric steering column lock.
35	—	Not used.
36	—	Not used.
37	—	Not used.
38	—	Electronic fan 2 relay
39	—	Electric fan 2 and 3 relay.
40	—	Headlamp washer relay.
41	—	Horn relay.
42	—	Fuel pump relay.
43	10A ¹	Not used (spare).
44	5A ¹	Heated washer nozzle.
45	—	Not used.
46	10A ²	Alternator sensor.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
47	10A ²	Brake on/off switch.
48	20A ¹	Horn.
49	20A ¹	Diesel fuel heater.
50	10A ¹	Power transfer unit fan.
51	—	Not used.
52	—	Not used.
53	10A ¹	Power seats.
54	5A ²	Fuel operated heater.
55	5A ²	Fuel operated heater.

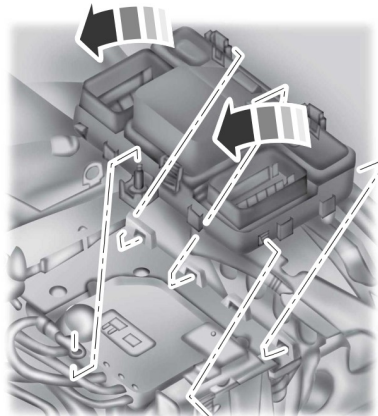
¹Micro fuse.

²Dual micro fuse.

³M-type fuse.

Power Distribution Box - Bottom

There are fuses located on the bottom of the fuse box. To access the bottom of the fuse box, do the following:

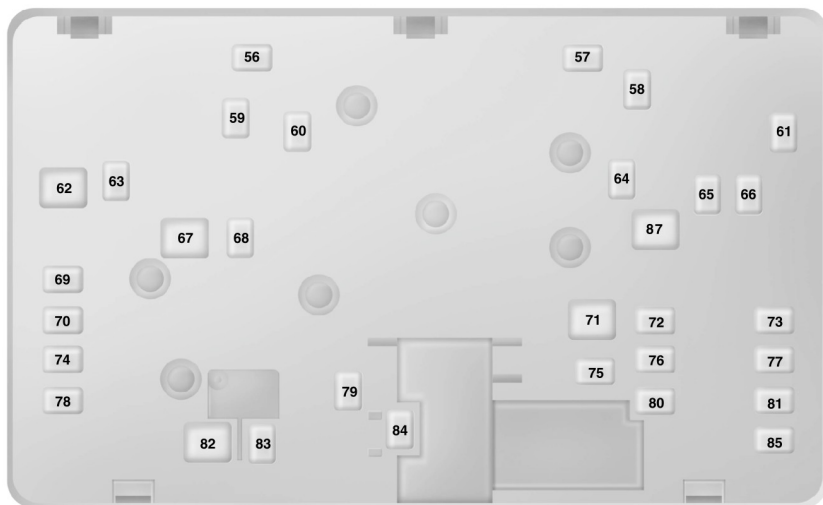


E145983

1. Release the two latches, located on both sides of the fuse box.

Fuses

2. Raise the inboard side of the fuse box from the cradle.
3. Move the fuse box toward the center of the engine compartment.
4. Pivot the outboard side of the fuse box to access the bottom side.



E190798

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
56	20A ¹	Headlamp washer.
57	20A ¹	Diesel vaporizer.
58	30A ¹	Fuel pump feed.
59	40A ²	600W Electronic fan 3.
60	40A ²	600W Electronic fan 1.
61	40A ¹	Left hand side windshield defrost.
62	50A ²	Body control module 1.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
63	25A ¹	600W Electronic fan 2.
64	30A ¹	Auxiliary heater #3.
65	20A ¹	Front heated seat.
66	40A ¹	Right hand side windshield defrost.
67	50A ²	Body control module 2.
68	40A ¹	Heated rear window.
69	30A ¹	Anti-lock brake system valves.
70	30A ¹	Passenger seat.
71	60A ²	Auxiliary heater #2.
72	30A ¹	Rear power seats.
73	20A ¹	Rear heated seats.
74	30A ¹	Driver seat module.
75	30A ¹	Auxiliary heater #1.
76	20A ¹	Transmission oil pump.
77	30A ¹	Climate control seat module.
78	40A ¹	Trailer tow module.
79	40A ¹	Blower motor.
80	40A ¹	Power liftgate module.
81	40A ¹	220 volt inverter.
82	60A ²	Anti-lock brake system pump.
83	25A ¹	Wiper motor #1.
84	30A ¹	Starter solenoid.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
85	20A ¹	Fuel fire heater.
86	—	Not used.
87	50A ²	Auxiliary blower motor.

¹ M-type fuse.

² J-type fuse.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is located under the instrument panel to the left of the steering column.

Note: *It may be easier to access the fuse panel if you remove the finish trim piece.*



E145984

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	10A ¹	Lighting (ambient, glove box, vanity, dome, liftgate).
2	7.5A ¹	Memory seats, lumbar, power mirror.
3	20A ¹	Driver door unlock.
4	5A ¹	Aftermarket electronic trailer brake on/off switch.
5	20A ¹	Ignition switch. Push-button ignition switch.
6	10A ²	Heated seat relay coil.
7	10A ²	Not used (spare).
8	10A ²	Not used (spare).
9	10A ²	Not used (spare).
10	5A ²	Keypad. Power liftgate module.
11	5A ²	Not used.
12	7.5A ²	Climate control.
13	7.5A ²	Steering wheel column lock. Cluster. Datalink logic.
14	10A ²	Not used.
15	10A ²	Datalink gateway module.
16	15A ¹	Child lock. Liftgate release.
17	5A ²	Not used (spare).
18	5A ²	Ignition. Push button stop start switch.
19	7.5A ²	Passenger airbag disabled indicator. Transmission range indicator.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
20	7.5A ²	Not used (spare).
21	5A ²	Humidity and in-car temperature sensor. Blind spot information system. Rear video camera. Adaptive cruise control.
22	5A ²	Occupant classification sensor.
23	10A ¹	Delayed accessory (power inverter logic, moonroof logic).
24	20A ¹	Central lock unlock.
25	30A ¹	Driver door (window, mirror).
26	30A ¹	Front passenger door (window, mirror).
27	30A ¹	Moonroof.
28	20A ¹	Amplifier.
29	30A ¹	Rear driver side door (window).
30	30A ¹	Rear passenger side door (window).
31	15A ¹	Not used (spare).
32	10A ¹	Global positioning system. Display. Voice control. Adaptive cruise control. Radio frequency receiver.
33	20A ¹	Radio.
34	30A ¹	Run-start bus (fuse 19, 20, 21, 22, 35, 36, 37, circuit breaker).
35	5A ¹	Restraints control module.
36	15A ¹	Auto-dimming rear view mirror. Heated seat. All-wheel drive.

Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
37	15A ¹	Voltage stability module logic power.
38	30A	Not used (spare).

¹Micro fuse.

²Dual micro fuse.

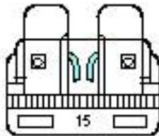
CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING



Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E142430

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. A break in the fuse wire will indicate a blown fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Maintenance

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

To help you service your vehicle, we provide scheduled maintenance information which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).

2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

Working with the Engine On

WARNING



To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Block the wheels

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

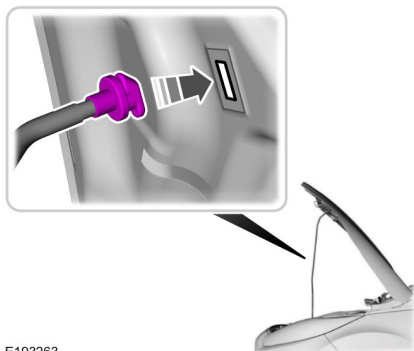
Opening the Hood



E142457

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your right-hand side.

Maintenance



4. Open the hood. Support the hood with the strut.

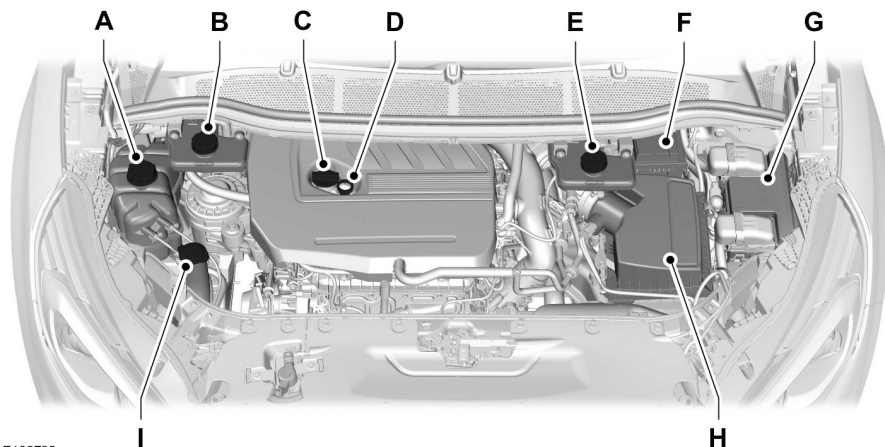
Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8–12 in (20–30 cm).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

E193263

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



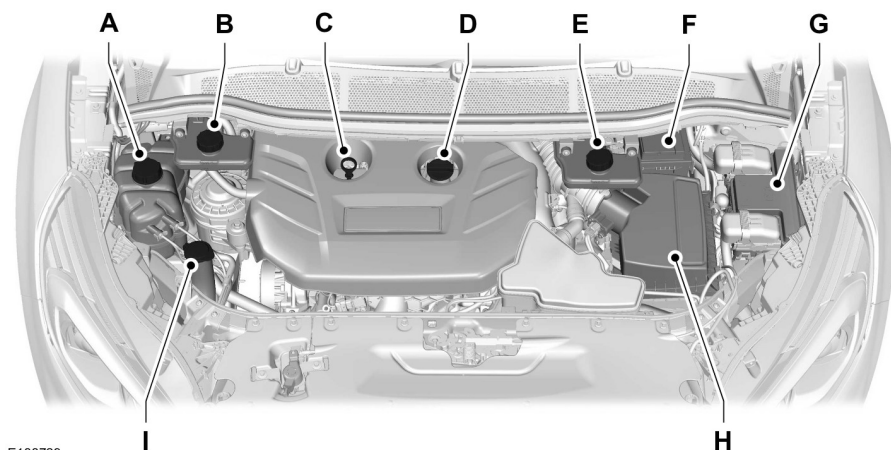
E188732

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 248).
- B Brake fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 249).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 247).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 247).
- E Brake fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 249).

Maintenance

- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 250).
- G Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 233).
- H Air filter assembly.
- I Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 250).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

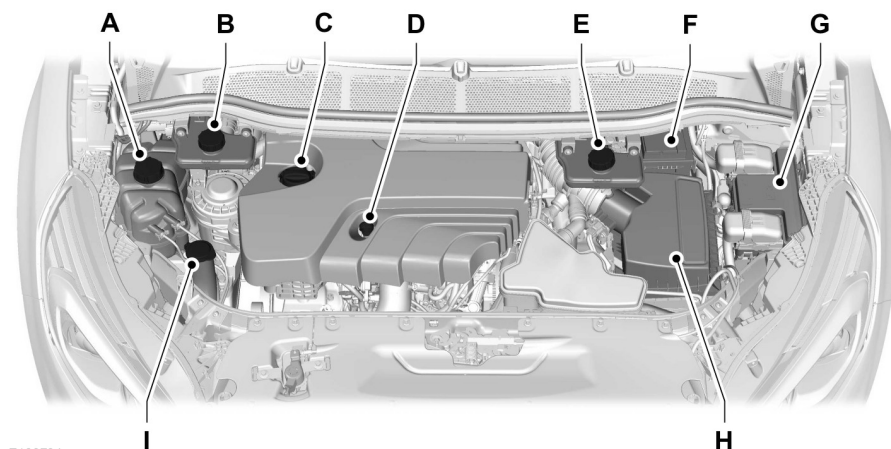


E188729

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 248).
- B Brake fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 249).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 247).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 247).
- E Brake fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 249).
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 250).
- G Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 233).
- H Air filter assembly.
- I Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 250).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL

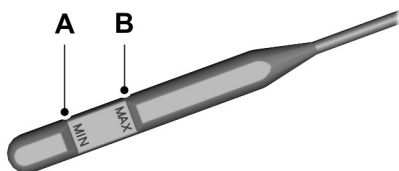


E188734

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 248).
- B Brake fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 249).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 247).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 247).
- E Brake fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 249).
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 250).
- G Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 233).
- H Air filter assembly.
- I Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 250).

Maintenance

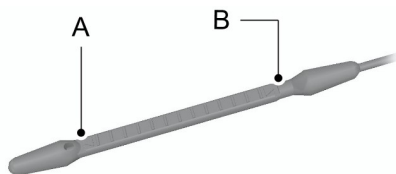
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



E199415

- A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



E140423

- A Minimum
B Maximum

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



E161560

- A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 285).

Note: Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

Note: Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions they may cause engine damage.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).

Maintenance

Adding Engine Oil

WARNINGS



Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.



Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

1. Remove the engine oil filler cap. See **Maintenance** (page 243).
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 285).
3. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.



Only add coolant when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilt on a hot exhaust.



E169064

Make sure that the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir. If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add coolant immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 279).

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.

Adding Engine Coolant

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add engine coolant to the MAX mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 279).

Note: In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Note: Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, such as corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Maintenance

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

Note: *Transmission fluid should be checked by an authorized dealer. If required, fluid should be added by an authorized dealer.*

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, (i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly) or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS



Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNINGS



A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



E170684

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 279).

CLUTCH FLUID CHECK - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 249).

Maintenance

WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

WARNINGS



For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 244).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If your vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *Electrical accessories or components added to your vehicle by you or an authorized dealer, may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

Maintenance

If a replacement battery is required, we recommend you use a Ford replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.*
4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal first.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal last.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. Install in the reverse order.**

*The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

Note: If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid un-intended connection or arcing.

Note: Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.

Note: If you disconnect or replace the battery, you must reset the clock and the pre-set radio stations once the battery is reconnected.

Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

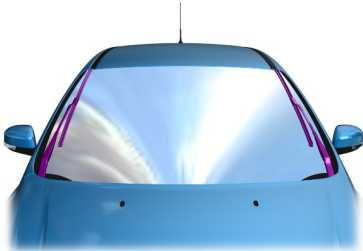
Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Maintenance

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 251). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

Service Position



E75184

Set the windshield wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades. The windshield wipers return to the starting position when you switch the ignition on.

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Move the wiper arms to the service position manually.

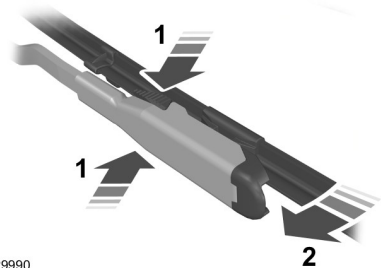
Note: You cannot move the wiper arms to the service position manually when you switch the ignition on.

Note: You can use the service position to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice. Make sure the windshield is free from snow and ice before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.



E129990

1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.
2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Install in the reverse order.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Note: Make sure the windshield is clean before using new wiper blades.

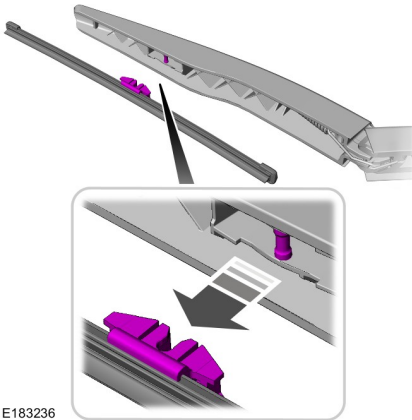
Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blade

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Maintenance



E183236

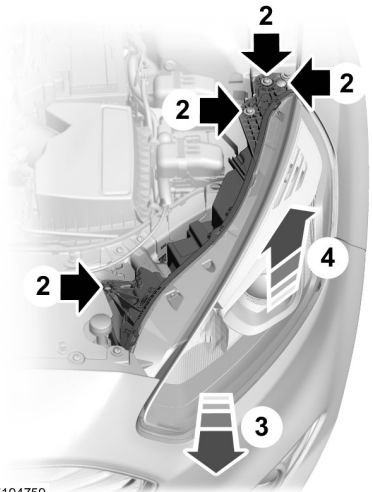
2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Install in the reverse order.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Note: Make sure the rear window is clean before using a new wiper blade.

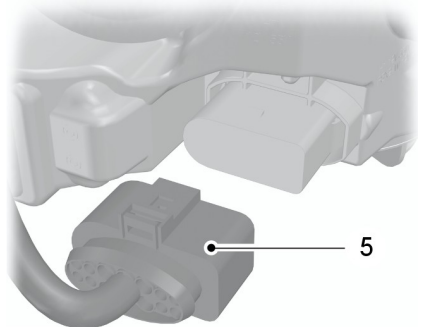
REMOVING A HEADLAMP

1. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 243).



E194759

2. Remove the screws.
3. Pull the headlamp as far as possible towards the front of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.



E133750

5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

Maintenance

CHANGING A BULB

WARNINGS



Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.

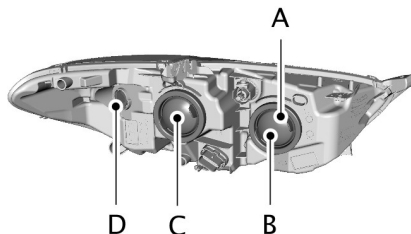


Bulbs become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 257).

The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Install in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

Headlamp



E159753

- A Side lamps.
- B Headlamp high beam.
- C Headlamp low beam.
- D Front direction indicator.

Front Side Lamp

1. Remove the headlamp assembly. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 253).
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Depress the tabs on the socket and remove the socket and bulb together.

4. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.

Headlamp Low Beam

1. Remove the headlamp assembly. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 253).
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Headlamp High Beam

1. Remove the headlamp assembly. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 253).
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Front Direction Indicator

1. Remove the headlamp assembly. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 253).
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

Front Fog Lamp

Note: To remove the front fog lamp bulb, access the underside of your vehicle.

Maintenance



E174588

1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

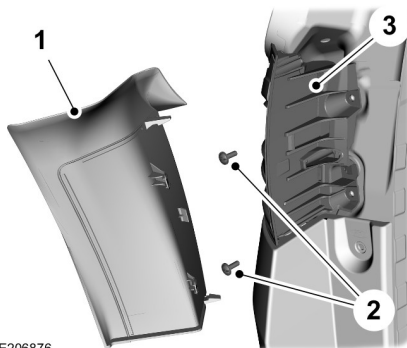
LED Lamps:

LED lamps are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

The following lamps are LED:

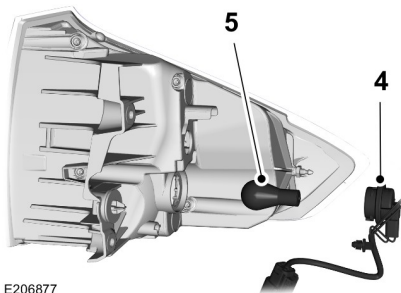
- Daytime running lamp.
- Rear lamp.
- Brake lamp.
- Central high mounted brake lamp.

Rear Direction Indicator



E206876

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the screws that secure the lamp assembly.
3. Remove the lamp.



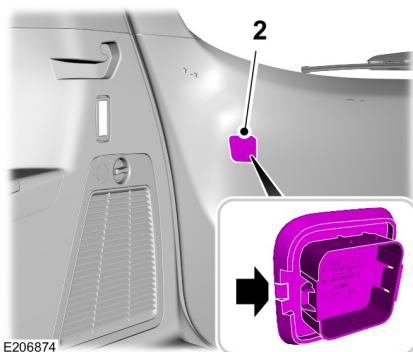
E206877

4. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
5. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

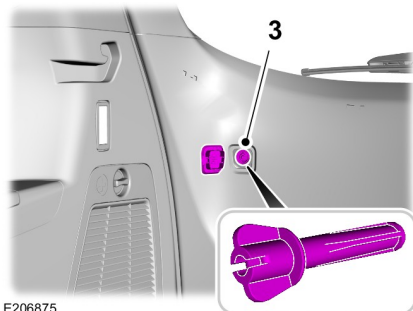
Reversing Lamp

1. Open the liftgate.

Maintenance



2. Carefully remove the cover.



3. Remove the wing nut.
4. Remove the lamp.



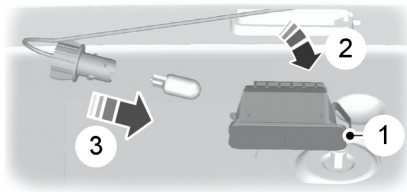
5. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.



6. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.

Maintenance

License Plate Lamp

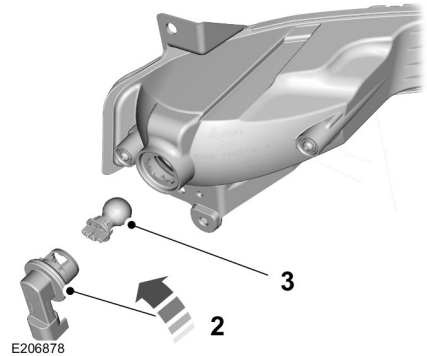


E72789

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Rear Fog Lamp

Note: To remove the rear fog lamp bulb, access the underside of your vehicle.



E206878

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front side lamp.	W5W	5
Front direction indicator.	PY21W	21
Daytime running lamps.	LED	LED
Headlamp low beam.	H7	55
Headlamp high beam.	H15	55
Cornering lamps.	H1	55
Front fog lamp.	H11	55
Side direction indicator.	WY5W	5
Brake and rear lamp.	LED	LED
Central high mounted brake lamp.	LED	LED

Maintenance

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Rear direction indicator.	PY21W	21
Rear fog lamp.	P21W	21
Reversing lamps.	W16W	16
License plate lamp.	W5W	5

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Glove compartment lamp.	LED	LED
Interior lamp.	LED	LED
Map lamp.	LED	LED
Vanity Mirror Lamp.	LED	LED
Luggage compartment lamp.	LED	LED

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Note: If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.

Note: Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.

Note: Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.

Note: Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.

Note: Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

Note: Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

Cleaning the Rear Window

Note: Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Note: Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

Note: Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.

Note: Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.

Body Paintwork Preservation

WARNINGS



Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.



Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.



Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

Safety Belts

Note: Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

Note: Do not allow moisture to penetrate the safety belt retractor mechanism.

Clean them with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.

Vehicle Care

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Rear Windows

Note: Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

Note: Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

Note: Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.

Note: Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

Note: If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Note: Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Wheels and Tires

GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

Note: Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

Note: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

Note: If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.

TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

Your vehicle may not have a spare wheel and tire. In these cases it will be supplied with a temporary mobility kit which will only repair one damaged tire.

The kit is located in the underfloor stowage compartment between the first and second row seats, on the right hand side of your vehicle.

General Information

WARNINGS



Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all.

Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



Do not use the temporary mobility kit on a previously damaged tire. For example, when a tire has been driven under inflated.

WARNINGS



Do not use the temporary mobility kit on run flat tires.



Do not use the temporary mobility kit to repair the sidewall of a damaged tire.

The temporary mobility kit seals most tire punctures with a diameter of up to ¼ in (6 mm) to temporarily restore mobility.

You must observe the following rules when using the temporary mobility kit:

- Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving maneuvers especially if your vehicle is heavily loaded or towing a trailer.
- Only continue your journey to the next vehicle or tire dealer or drive a maximum distance of 125 mi (200 km).
- Do not exceed a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Keep the temporary mobility kit out of the reach of children.
- Only use the temporary mobility kit when the ambient temperature is between -30° and 70° C (-22° and 158° F).
- Do not use the temporary mobility kit on T-type (mini spare) tires.

Using the Temporary Mobility Kit

WARNINGS



Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.



Compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant.



Never leave the temporary mobility kit unattended while in use.

Wheels and Tires

WARNINGS



Do not keep the compressor operating for longer than 10 minutes.



You must only use the temporary mobility kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.

Before you use the temporary mobility kit:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Do not attempt to remove foreign material that is penetrating the tire, for example, nails or screws.
- Leave the engine running while the temporary mobility kit is in use. If your vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated area use the temporary mobility kit with the engine switched off.
- You must replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiry date which is printed on the top of sealant bottle.
- Inform all vehicle users that a tire has been repaired using the temporary mobility kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that apply.

Inflating the Tire

WARNINGS



Check the sidewall of the tire prior to using the temporary mobility kit. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage do not attempt to inflate the tire.



Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating.



Watch the sidewall of the tire. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch off the compressor immediately and deflate the tire using the pressure relief valve B.

WARNINGS



The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin or clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact a physician.



If the tire inflation pressure does not reach the recommended pressure within 10 minutes, the tire may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. Do not continue driving with this tire.

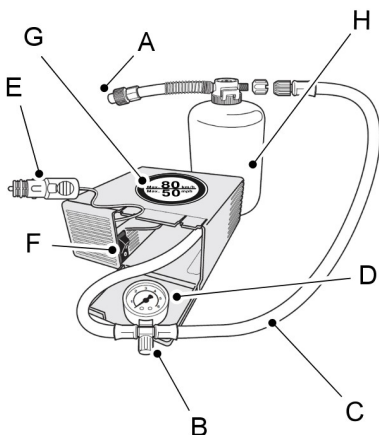


Screwing the sealant bottle onto the bottle holder will pierce the seal of the sealant bottle. Do not unscrew the sealant bottle from the bottle holder prior to completing a temporary repair as the sealant will escape.



If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to stop your vehicle. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 45 psi (3 bar) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire.

Wheels and Tires



E146784

- A Protective cap.
- B Pressure relief valve.
- C Hose.
- D Pressure gauge.
- E Power plug with cable.
- F Compressor switch.
- G Label.
- H Sealant bottle.

1. Open the lid of the temporary mobility kit.
2. Peel off the label G showing the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) from the casing and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
3. Take the hose C and the power plug with cable E out of the temporary mobility kit.
4. Screw the hose C onto the sealant bottle.
5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
6. Remove the protective cap A from the sealant bottle hose and screw the hose firmly onto the valve of the damaged tire.
7. Make sure that the compressor switch F is in position 0.
8. Insert the power plug E into the auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 139).
9. Start the engine.
10. Move the compressor switch F to position 1.
11. After a minimum of two minutes move the compressor switch F to position 0 and unscrew the hose C from the sealant bottle. Unscrew the sealant bottle hose from the tire valve.
12. Screw the hose C onto the tire valve and move the compressor switch F to position 1.
13. Inflate the tire for no longer than 10 minutes or to the recommended inflation pressure. Move the compressor switch F to position 0 and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge D. Unscrew the hose C from the tire valve.
14. Remove the power plug E from the auxiliary power point.
15. Make sure the temporary mobility kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely, but still easily accessible in your vehicle. The temporary mobility kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure.
16. Immediately drive approximately six miles (10 kilometers) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.

Wheels and Tires

Note: When pumping in the sealant through the tire valve, the pressure may rise up to 87 psi (6 bar) but will drop again after about 30 seconds.

WARNING



If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to stop your vehicle. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than the recommended pressure or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire.

Checking the Tire Pressure

WARNING



Before driving make sure the tire is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 276). Monitor the tire pressure until the sealed tire is replaced.

1. Stop your vehicle after driving about six miles (10 kilometers). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.
2. Attach the temporary mobility kit and check the tire pressure from the pressure gauge D.
3. If the pressure of the sealant-filled tire is more than the recommended pressure, adjust it to the recommended pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 276).
4. Follow the inflation procedure once again to inflate the tire.
5. Check the tire pressure again from the pressure gauge D. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve B.

6. If the tire pressure is less than the recommended pressure, repeat steps 13 to 16 and steps 1 to 5 (Checking the Tire Pressure).
7. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch F to position O, remove the power plug E from the auxiliary power point, unscrew the sealant bottle hose, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap A.
8. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the wheel, inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant. Renew the sealant bottle as soon as possible after it has been used once.

Note: The temporary mobility kit only provides an emergency repair. Regulations concerning tire repair after using the temporary mobility kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice.

Empty sealant bottles can be disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remaining sealant to an authorized dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

TIRE CARE

Note: If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance, or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

Wheels and Tires

Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly. A dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly is defined as a spare tire or wheel that is different in brand, size, or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

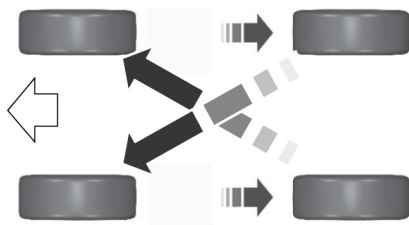
Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Rotating your tires at regular intervals of between 3000 and 6000 miles (5000 and 10000 kilometers) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tread life. Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

Tire Rotation

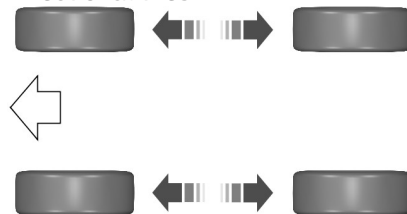
Front-wheel drive and All-wheel drive vehicles (front tires at left of diagram).

Non-directional tires



E142547

Directional tires



E70415

USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 40°F (5°C) or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above 20°F (-7°C). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below 20°F (-7°C). If the tires have been subjected to 20°F (-7°C) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 40°F (5°C) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire

Wheels and Tires

inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

USING WINTER TIRES

If winter tires are used you must inflate them to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressure table. See **Tire Pressures** (page 276).

Note: *Winter weather driving capability will be reduced if a dissimilar size spare tire is installed on your vehicle.*

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNINGS



Do not exceed 31 mph (50 km/h).



Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



If your vehicle has wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Note: *The anti-lock braking system will continue to operate normally.*

Only certain chains or snow cables have been approved as safe for use on your vehicle with the following wheel and tire combination(s): 17" wheels with 235/55R17 tires. You should only install chains or cables sized at 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

See **Wheels and Tires** (page 261). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

Wheels and Tires

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

To check the tire pressures through the information display, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Driver Assist	Press the OK button.
Tire Monitor	Press the OK button.
Tire Pressure	Press the OK button. The tyre pressure graphic displays.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after

replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 4 psi (0.3 bar) from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 3 psi (0.2 bar) when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 31°F (17°C) or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Wheels and Tires

Note: *Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle.

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates. You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle.

When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

When Inflating the Tires

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

Wheels and Tires

System Warning Lamps

Warning lamp	Description	Action
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See Wheels and Tires (page 261). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar). 2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure in this chapter.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.
Solid warning lamp initially followed by a flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.

If the Warning Lamp is On:

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

Wheels and Tires

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNINGS



The use of tire sealants may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used when temporary mobility is required (due to a flat tire) and a mini spare tire is not available. If you must use a sealant, the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer.



If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 266).

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on your vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, **do not** apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 266). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size, or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

- 1. T-Type mini-spares:** This spare tire begins with the letter 'T' for tire size and may have "Temporary Use Only" molded in the sidewall.
- 2. Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond the maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the tires of the axle fitted with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.

Wheels and Tires

- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

3. Full-sized dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the tires of the axle fitted with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

Tire Change Procedure

WARNINGS



When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent your vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if your vehicle is in park (P).



To help prevent your vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of your vehicle) to the tire being changed.



If your vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.



Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



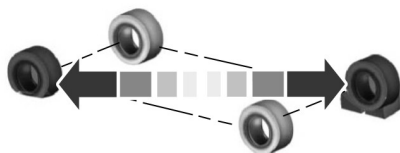
To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under your vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.

Note: *Passengers should not remain in your vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

Wheels and Tires

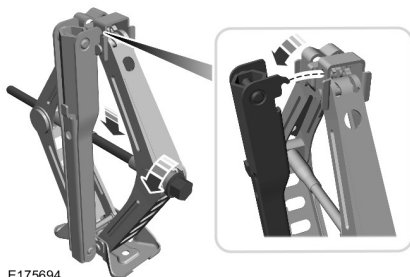
Vehicles equipped with a full-size spare tire:

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off. For vehicles with a manual transmission, place the transmission in reverse (R) after the engine is turned off.



E175447

3. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.
4. Remove the lug wrench and vehicle jack from the under floor storage compartment.
5. Remove the carpeted wheel cover and spare tire.



E175694

6. To remove the wrench from the jack, turn the hex nut on the jack counterclockwise. This will lower the jack and loosen the mechanical lock.
7. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



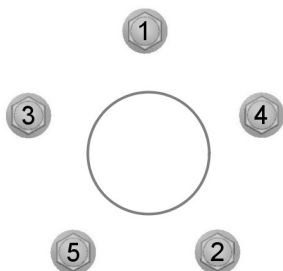
E145908

8. The vehicle jacking points are shown above, and are depicted on the yellow warning label on the jack.
9. Raise the vehicle by turning the jack handle clockwise. Once the flat tire is raised above the ground, remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

Note: If equipped with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.

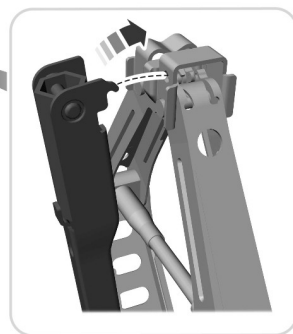
10. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
11. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

Wheels and Tires



E75442

12. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Lug Nuts** (page 278).
13. Put the flat tire, jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.



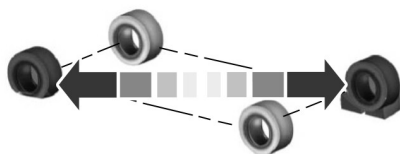
E176165

14. To store the folded wrench on the jack, engage the bracket of the jack base on the wrench as shown. Swing the wrench upwards and adjust the height of the jack until the pin engages the hole. Tighten the hex nut clockwise by hand until secure.
15. Unblock the wheel.

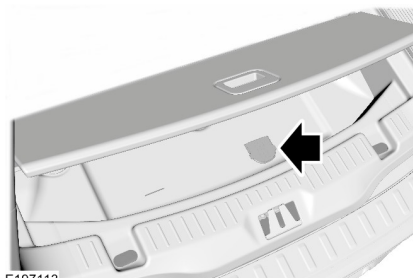
Vehicles equipped with a mini-size spare tire:

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flasher.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off. For vehicles with a manual transmission, place the transmission in reverse (R) after the engine is turned off.

Wheels and Tires

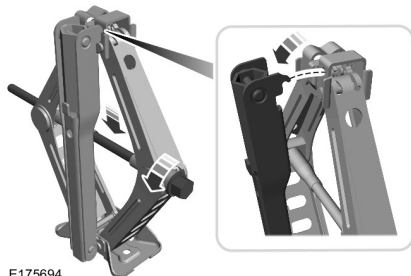


E175447



E197113

3. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.
4. Remove the lug wrench and vehicle jack from the under floor storage compartment.



E175694

5. To remove the wrench from the jack, turn the hex nut on the jack counterclockwise. This will lower the jack and loosen the mechanical lock.

6. Locate the winch access hole in the rear storage compartment and insert the lug wrench.
7. Turn the lug wrench counterclockwise and lower the spare tire until it can slide rearward with the cable fully extended. Remove and save the plastic stability cup from the retainer cable. Slide the retainer through the center of the wheel.
8. If the spare tire is equipped with a tether, lift the spare tire on its end and remove the lug nut from the spare tire tether.
9. If you are not replacing the mini-spare tire back to the underbody storage area, raise the winch cable up to the fully installed position.

Note: The full sized road tire will not fit under your vehicle. Store and secure it inside the vehicle.

10. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

Wheels and Tires



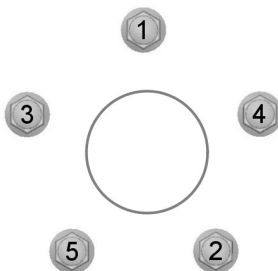
E145908

11. The vehicle jacking points are shown above, and are depicted on the yellow warning label on the jack.
12. Raise the vehicle by turning the jack handle clockwise. Once the flat tire is raised above the ground, remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

Note: If equipped with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.

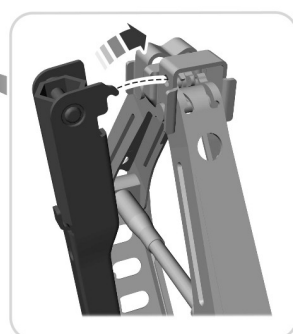
13. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

14. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

15. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Lug Nuts** (page 278).
16. Put the flat tire, jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.



E176165

Wheels and Tires

17. To store the folded wrench on the jack, engage the bracket of the jack base on the wrench as shown. Swing the wrench upwards and adjust the height of the jack until the pin engages the hole. Tighten the hex nut clockwise by hand until secure.

18. Unblock the wheel.

To install the mini-spare tire back into the underbody storage area, perform the following steps.

1. Place the tire on end with the valve stem facing rearward, away from the vehicle.
2. If equipped, place the tether into the bolt holes in the wheel and attach the lug nut using the lug wrench.
3. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing down.
4. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the center of the wheel.

5. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is raised to its original position underneath your vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly as the tire contacts the frame. The spare tire winch clutch will click twice when the spare tire is fully seated in the underbody storage area.
6. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame. Push against the tire to make sure it is tightly seated under your vehicle. Loosen and re-tighten if necessary. Make sure that the tire does not contact the bumper.

Note: Failure to properly stow the spare tire may result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the spare tire.

Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure or any time that the spare is disturbed through service of other components.

TIRE PRESSURES

Continuous Speeds up to 100 mph (160 km/h) without Trailer Tow

Engine	Tire Size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar / PSI / kPa			
All	235/55R17*	2.4 / 35 / 240		2.7 / 39 / 270	3.1 / 45 / 310
	235/50R18	2.4 / 35 / 240	2.2 / 32 / 220	2.8 / 41 / 280	3.2 / 46 / 320
	245/45R19				
	T155/70R17	4.2 / 60 / 420			

*Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Using Snow Chains** (page 266).

Wheels and Tires

Continuous Speeds in excess of 100 mph (160 km/h) or under Trailer Tow conditions up to 62 mph (100 km/h)


Engine	Tire Size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar / PSI / kPa			
1.5L I4 GTDI	235/55R17	2.6 / 38 / 260		2.8 / 41 / 280	3.4 / 49 / 340
	235/50R18			3.0 / 44 / 300	
	245/45R19			2.8 / 41 / 280	
2.0L I4 DW10F or 2.0L I4 GTDI	235/55R17			3.0 / 44 / 300	
	235/50R18			3.2 / 46 / 320	
	245/45R19			3.0 / 44 / 300	

Wheels and Tires

LUG NUTS

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

WARNING

 When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Bolt size	lb-ft (Nm)*
M14 x 1.5	162 lb.ft (220 Nm)

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance, for example tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - S-MAX

Dimension description.	in (mm)
Maximum length.	190.9 in (4,848 mm)
Overall width including exterior mirrors.	84.1 in (2,137 mm)
Overall height - EC curb weight.	67.6–69.5 in (1,718–1,766 mm)
Wheelbase.	112.2 in (2,849 mm)
Front track.	63.0 in (1,601 mm)
Rear track.	63.0 in (1,601 mm)

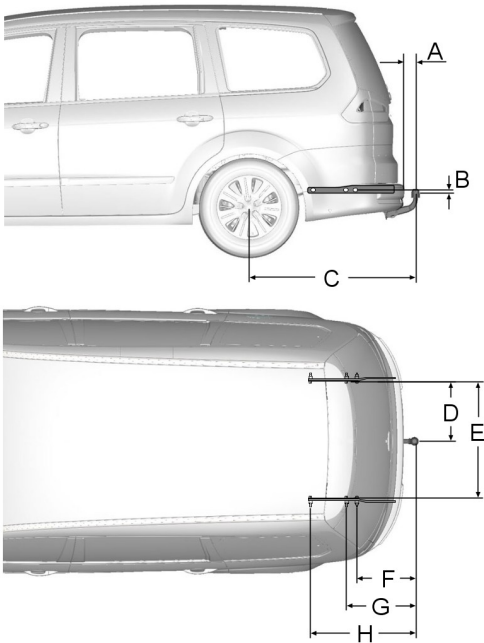
Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - GALAXY

Dimension description.	in (mm)
Maximum length.	188.8 in (4,796 mm)
Maximum length. Vehicles with body styling kit.	190.2 in (4,830 mm)
Overall width including exterior mirrors.	84.1 in (2,137 mm)
Overall height - EC curb weight.	64.3–66.0 in (1,632–1,676 mm)
Wheelbase.	112.2 in (2,850 mm)
Front track.	63.2 in (1,606 mm)
Rear track.	63.2 in (1,606 mm)

Capacities and Specifications

TOWBAR DIMENSIONS - S-MAX



E75181

Item	Dimension Description	in (mm)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	3.1 in (79 mm)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	44.7 in (1,135 mm)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	16.6 in (422 mm)
E	Inner side of side member.	33.2 in (844 mm)

Capacities and Specifications

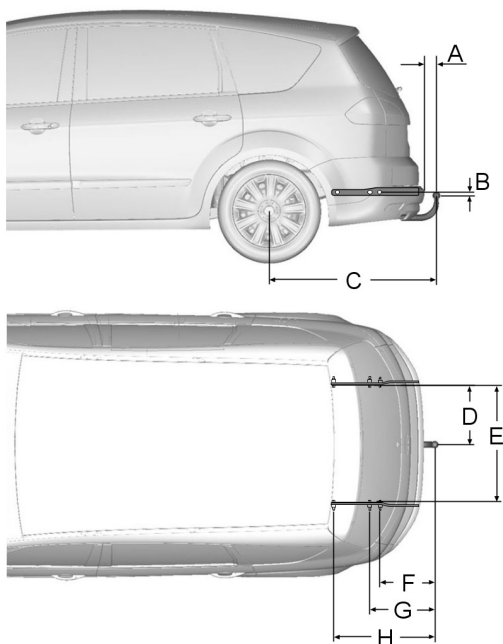
Item	Dimension Description	in (mm)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	
H	Center of tow ball to center of third attachment point.	

Maximum Static Vertical Load

(kg)
198 (90)

Capacities and Specifications

TOWBAR DIMENSIONS - GALAXY



E75182

Item	Dimension Description	in (mm)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	3.1 in (80 mm)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	42.8 in (1,088 mm)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	16.7 in (423 mm)
E	Inner side of side member.	33.3 in (846 mm)

Capacities and Specifications

Item	Dimension Description	in (mm)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	
H	Center of tow ball to center of third attachment point.	

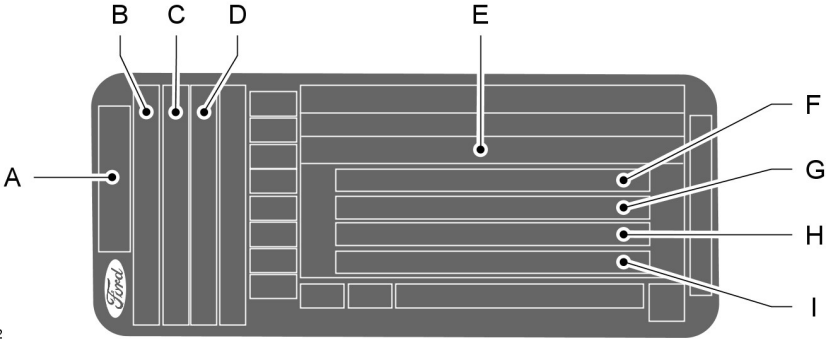
Maximum Static Vertical Load

(kg)
198 (90)

Note: *The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

Note: *Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.*



E135662

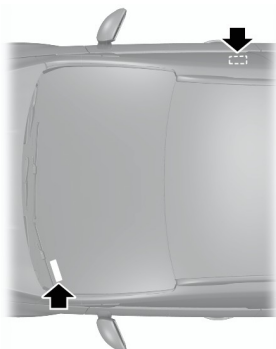
- A Model
- B Variant
- C Engine designation
- D Engine power and emission level
- E Vehicle identification number

Capacities and Specifications

- F Gross vehicle weight
- G Gross train weight
- H Maximum front axle weight
- I Maximum rear axle weight

Your vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate, located at the bottom of the lock side of the right-hand door aperture.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant R-134a under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Item	Capacity gal (L)
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	0.90 (4.1)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	0.9 (4)
Engine coolant fill capacity. ^{1, 2, 3.}	2.4 (10.7)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity.	1.9 (8.5)
Manual transmission fluid fill capacity.	0.4 (1.75)

Capacities and Specifications

Item	Capacity gal (L)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	15.0 (68.1)
Windshield, rear window and headlamp washer system fill capacity.	1.0 (4.5)

¹Vehicles with Fuel Operated Heater add 0.2 gal (0.7 L).

²Vehicles with Auxiliary Heater add 0.3 gal (1.3 L).

³Vehicles with Fuel Operated Heater and Auxiliary Heater add 0.5 gal (2 L).

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
0.2 gal (0.8 L)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Automatic Transmission Oil C-ML5 7U7J-M2C938-AB	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA	WSS-M14P19-A

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) between scheduled service intervals.

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.

Capacities and Specifications

- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.



We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant R-134a under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Item	Capacity gal (L)
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	1.2 (5.4)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	1.1 (5.1)
Engine coolant fill capacity. ^{1, 2, 3.}	2.0 (8.9)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity.	1.9 (8.5)
Manual transmission fluid fill capacity.	0.4 (1.8)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	15.0 (68.1)
Windshield, rear window and headlamp washer system fill capacity.	1.0 (4.5)

¹Vehicles with Fuel Operated Heater add 0.2 gal (0.7 L).

²Vehicles with Auxiliary Heater add 0.3 gal (1.3 L).

³Vehicles with Fuel Operated Heater and Auxiliary Heater add 0.5 gal (2 L).

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
0.19 gal (0.85 L)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Capacities and Specifications

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Automatic Transmission Oil C-ML5 7U7J-M2C938-AB	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA	WSS-M14P19-A

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 0.19 gal (0.85 L) between scheduled service intervals.

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.



We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL

WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant R-134a under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities and Specifications

Capacities

Item	Capacity gal (L)
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	1.2 (5.6)
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	1.2 (5.4)
Engine coolant fill capacity. ^{1,2,3} 120ps and 150ps - vehicles with manual transmission.	1.6 (7.3)
Engine coolant fill capacity. ^{1,2,3} 180ps - vehicles with manual transmission.	1.7 (7.8)
Engine coolant fill capacity. ^{1,2,3} Vehicles with automatic transmission.	1.8 (8.2)
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity.	1.9 (8.5)
Manual transmission fluid fill capacity.	0.4 (1.8)
Fuel tank fill capacity.	14.6 (66.2)
Fuel tank fill capacity - vehicles with All Wheel Drive.	14.1 (64.3)
Windshield, rear window and headlamp washer system fill capacity.	1.0 (4.5)

¹Vehicles with Fuel Operated Heater add 0.2 gal (0.7 L).

²Vehicles with Auxiliary Heater add 0.3 gal (1.3 L).

³Vehicles with Fuel Operated Heater and Auxiliary Heater add 0.5 gal (2 L).

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
0.4 gal (1.6 L)

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium	WSS-M97B44-D

Capacities and Specifications

Name	Specification
4U7J-19544-xxxx	
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Automatic Transmission Oil C-ML5 7U7J-M2C938-AB	MERCON® LV WSS-M2C938-A
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA	WSS-M14P19-A

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, it is acceptable to use a SAE 0W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) between scheduled service intervals.

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.



We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Please refer to the regional Ford website.

Audio System

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

Audio System

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC

WARNING

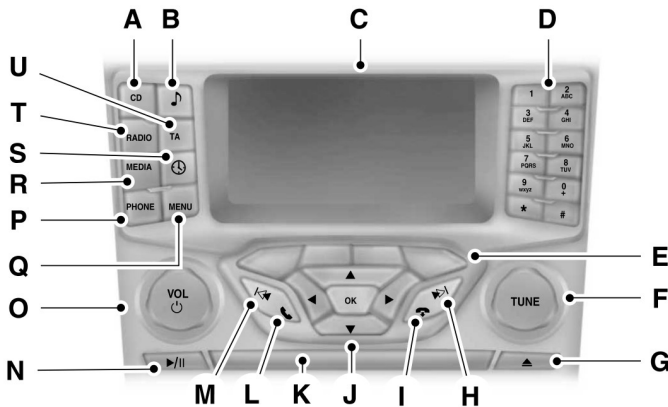


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.

Note: Some features, such as Sirius satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.

Audio System



E181142

- A CD:** Press this button to listen to a CD. Use the function buttons to select Repeat or Shuffle.
- B SOUND:** Press this button to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.
- C Display screen:** Shows audio and SYNC information.
- D Number block:** In radio mode, store and recall your favorite stations for later access. When tuned to any station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, press a button to select a track. In phone mode, press the buttons to enter a phone number.
- E Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).
- F TUNE:** Turn to search the frequency in individual increments.
- G Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.
- H Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the next strong radio station. In CD mode, press this button to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.
- I End phone call:** Press this button to end a phone call.

Audio System


- J **Cursor arrows and OK:** Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit.
- K **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- L **Pick-up or Make phone call:** Press this button to either pick-up an incoming phone call or to make a phone call.
- M **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the previous strong radio station. In CD mode, press this button to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.
- N **Play/Pause:** Press to either play or pause a track when listening to a CD, pause the SYNC menu or mute the radio.
- O **VOL and Power:** Press this button to switch the system off and on. Turn it to adjust the volume.
- P **PHONE:** Press this button to access the phone features of the SYNC® system. See **SYNC™** (page 304).
- Q **MENU:** Press this button to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- R **MEDIA:** Press this button to access your auxiliary input jack or switch between devices you plug into the input jack or USB port.
- S **Clock:** Press this button to access the clock setting. Use the center arrow controls to change the hours and minutes. You can also set the clock by pressing the **MENU** button and scrolling to Clock Settings.
- T **RADIO:** Press this button to listen to the radio or change radio frequency bands. Use the function buttons to select options such as Autostore and Direct Frequency Input.
- U **TA:** TA allows you to turn Traffic announcements on or off. You can also press this button to cancel announcements during an active announcement.

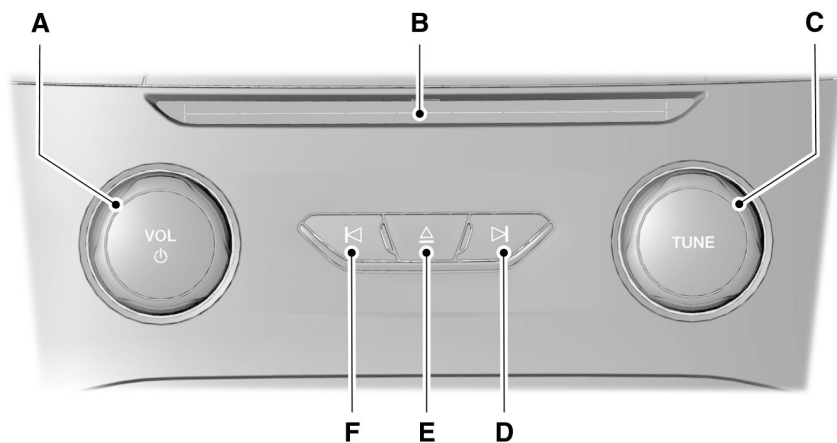
Audio System

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC2/PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

Note: Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.

WARNING

 Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E188891

- A **VOL and Power:** Press this button to switch the system off and on. Turn it to adjust the volume.
- B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

Audio System

- C **TUNE:** Turn to search the frequency in individual increments.
- D **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the next strong radio station. In CD mode, press this button to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.
- E **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.
- F **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the previous strong radio station. In CD mode, press this button to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.

Note: The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See **SYNC™ 2** (page 344).

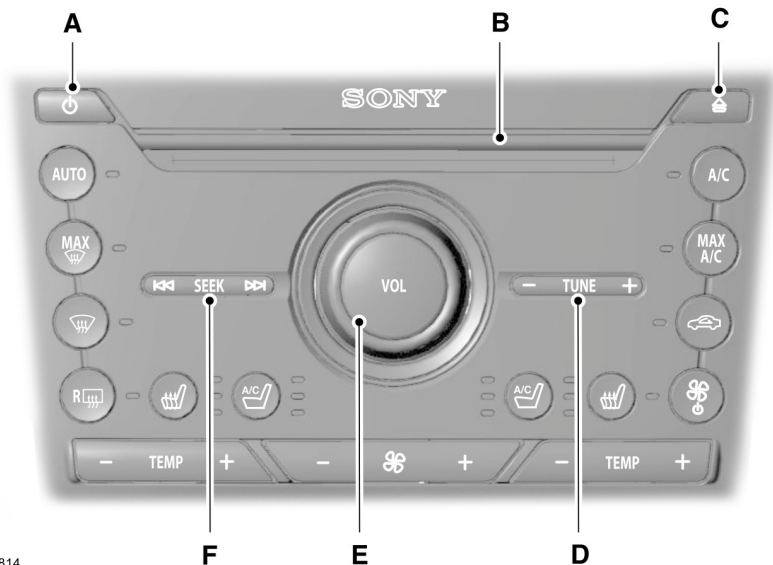
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2/SONY AM/FM/CD

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Audio System



E185814

- A **Power:** Press this button to switch the system off and on.
- B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- C **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.
- D **-TUNE +:** Press these buttons to search the frequency in individual increments.
- E **VOL:** Turn the control to adjust the volume.
- F **Seek, Reverse and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press one of these buttons. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. Press and hold one of these buttons to move quickly in that direction to the next strong radio station. In CD mode, press one of these buttons to select the previous or next track. Press and hold one of these buttons to move quickly in that direction within the current track.

Menu Structure

Note: Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different.

Press the menu button.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options.

Press the right arrow to enter a menu.
Press the left arrow to exit a menu.

Press the ok button to confirm a selection.

Audio System

Radio	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
AST	Select to store the six strongest local stations on the AM-AST and FM-AST frequency bands.
Radio Text *	Select to display extra information such as artist name.

*Extra information may not always be available.

Audio Settings	
Alternative Frequency	With the alternative frequency option active, the system re-tunes to a different frequency with better reception for the same station.
Regional Mode	Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies, switching between regionally related networks.
News announcement	With the news announcement option active, the system interrupts the active audio source to provide incoming news announcements, if the currently tuned station (or last tuned station in case of other active media) supports news.
Service Linking *	With Service Linking active the system automatically switches from DAB to FM, in case DAB becomes unavailable.
Speed Compensated Volume	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between 0 and +7.
Sound	Select to adjust settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance.

Audio System

Audio Settings	
Occupancy Mode	Select to optimize sound quality for the chosen seating position.
DSP	Choose between the stereo modes. Only with the external sound systems.

* Only within DAB variants.

CD Settings	
Scan All	Select to scan all disc selections.
Scan Folder	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.

Clock Settings	
Set Date and Time	Select to set the time and calendar date.
24 Hour	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.

Display Settings	
Dimming	Select to change display brightness.
Language	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
Temp. Setting	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius.

DIGITAL RADIO

General Information

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

Note: Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally.

The following formats are supported:

- DAB.
- DAB+.
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

Audio System

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

Note: *When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.*

Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station, the system automatically switches to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 291).

Note: *If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio mutes when attempting to switch.*

Note: *The system displays the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.*

Note: *The sound quality changes when your system switches from DAB to the corresponding FM station.*

Using Digital Audio Broadcast on a Non-Touchscreen

Selecting Radio Band

DAB1 and DAB2 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB1** or **DAB2**.
4. You can also press the **RADIO** button multiple times to toggle through all wavebands.

Radio Station Tuning Control

Press the **RADIO** button and select **DAB1** or **DAB2**. All preset banks operate in the same way and can store up to 10 different preset radio stations.

Note: *When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning skips to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio briefly mutes.*

Seek Tuning

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

Radio Station List

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press function button 1.
2. Press the left or right arrow buttons to change ensembles. Press the up or down arrow button to navigate to your required radio station.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.*

Manual Tuning

1. Turn the **TUNE** dial to the left or right.

Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 10 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message appear. When the progress bar completes, the radio station has been stored. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Audio System

Once stored, press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

Note: *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system will mute when this happens.*

Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select a radio station and press function button 3.

Note: *Extra information may not always be available.*

Using Digital Audio Broadcast and SYNC with Touchscreen

Selecting Radio Band

DAB1, DAB2 and DAB3 operate in the same way. You can store up to 6 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB1**, **DAB2** or **DAB3**.

Radio Station Tuning Control

Press the **RADIO** button and select **DAB1**, **DAB2** or **DAB3**. All preset banks operate in the same way and can store up to 10 different preset radio stations.

Note: *When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning skips to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio briefly mutes.*

Seek Tuning

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

Radio Station List

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press the browse button.
2. Press the previous ensemble or next ensemble to change ensembles. Navigate through the list and select the station by pressing the touchscreen area displaying your selection.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.*

Manual Tuning

1. Press the + tune - button.

Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 6 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A message appears when the radio station has been stored. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored, press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

Note: *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system will mute when this happens.*

Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on select **Options > Radio Text On**.

Note: *Extra information may not always be available.*

Audio System

AUDIO INPUT JACK

WARNINGS



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.



Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.

The auxiliary input jack allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male 1/8th-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at each end.

1. Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position **P**.
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the auxiliary input jack.
3. Switch the radio on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch your portable music player on and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press the media button until the audio input option appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.



E149149

Audio System

USB PORT

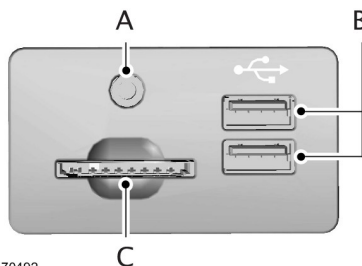


E149148

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **SYNC™** (page 304).

MEDIA HUB (If Equipped)

The media hub is inside the storage compartment in front of the gear shift lever.



E170492

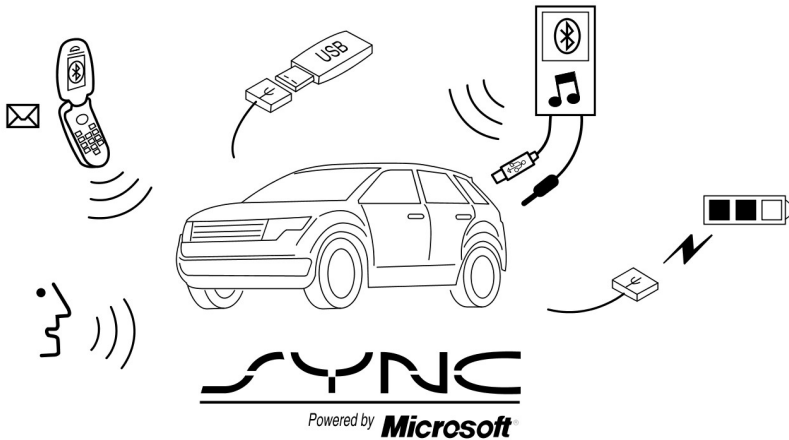
- A Line in.
- B USB ports.
- C SD card slot.

See **Entertainment** (page 365).

AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING

Message	Description and Action
Please check CD	General error message for CD fault conditions. For example cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Make sure the disc is loaded correctly. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If the error persists contact an authorized dealer.
CD Drive malfunction	General error message for a mechanism fault. The system has detected a fault that requires service.
CD drive too hot	General error message for the mechanism being too hot. The unit will not work until it has cooled down. If the error persists contact an authorized dealer.

GENERAL INFORMATION



E142598

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone and portable media player.

This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls
- Access and play music from your media player
- Use Emergency Assistance and applications, via SYNC AppLink*
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands
- Stream music from your connected cell phone
- Select pre-defined text messages (if your device supports this)

- Use the advanced voice recognition system
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this)

*These features are not available in all markets and may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Support

For further support, see an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Safety Information

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where you cannot step on them or they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cell phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile that is linked to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This will include the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of

supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log will remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **SYNC™** (page 304).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where system data can be accessed are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 319).

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

Helpful Hints

Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.

Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish followed by a single beep. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.

Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.

You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can also cancel a voice session at any time by pressing and holding the voice button.

Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button located on the steering wheel. A list of available commands appears in the display.

Global voice commands	
(cancel stop exit)	This command ends the voice session. You can also cancel a session by holding the voice button for two or more seconds.
help	This command provides you with hints, examples and instructions.
main menu	This command restarts the voice session from the initial starting point.

System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and your chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted:

Command	Description
voice settings	Provides access to change the interaction level.

Then any of the following:

Command	Description
interaction mode advanced	Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
interaction mode novice	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request. For

example, the system may ask if the command phone is correct.

Press the voice button. When prompted:

Command	Description
voice settings	Provides access to change the confirmation prompt setting.

Then any of the following:

Command	Description
confirmation prompts off	Makes a best guess from the command. You may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
confirmation prompts on	Clarifies your voice command with a short question.

The system creates suggestion lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice commands. When switched on, the system may prompt you with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

Command	Description
media candidate lists off	Makes a best guess from the media suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
media candidate lists on	Clarifies your voice command for media suggestions.
phone candidate lists off	Makes a best guess from the cell phone suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
phone candidate lists on	Clarifies your voice command for cell phone suggestions.

Press the **MENU** button.

Changing the Voice Settings

You can change the voice settings using the information and entertainment display.

You can then select the following:

Action	Message
SYNC-Settings	
Voice settings	Enters menu for voice options.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are cell phone dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to your device's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *You must switch the ignition and radio on.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates that no phones are paired, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your cell phone to start the pairing process.
4. Select SYNC on your cell phone.
5. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Note: *In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*

Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone the system automatically tries to connect with first when you switch the ignition on) or downloading your phonebook.



The information display may show your cell phone's battery charge level and signal strength.

Using Voice Commands



Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(pair ([Bluetooth] device phone Bluetooth [audio]) add phone)	Follow the instructions on the audio display.

Words in square brackets [] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: You must switch the ignition and radio on.

Note: To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device to start the pairing process.
7. Select SYNC on your cell phone.
8. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Note: In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

The system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone or downloading your phonebook.

Cell Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
(phone Blackberry iPhone Mobile)
Then say any of the following:
call (___)
call ___ at home

Voice Command
call ___ ([at] work [(in at) [the]] office)
call ___ on (mobile cell)
call ___ on other
dial [[a] number] ¹
([go to] privacy [on] transfer to phone handsfree off) ²
(hold call [on] (put place) call on hold) ²
join (call calls) ²
mute [call] [on] ²
(mute [call] off Unmute [call]) ²
(turn ringer on silent mode off)

Voice Command
(turn ringer off silent mode [on])
[text] (messages message) ³
Help

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles".

¹ See **Dial** table below.

² These commands are only valid while in a phone call.

³ See the text message table below.

Dial Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following commands:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Pound	This will add a # symbol to the number or name.
Number	0 (zero) to 9 (nine)
Asterisk or Star	This will add a * symbol to the number or name.
clear	Deletes all entered digits
(delete correct)	Deletes the last set of entered digits.
Plus	This will add a + symbol to the number or name.

Note: To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or any button on the audio unit.

Phonebook Hints

To hear how the SYNC system speaks a name browse phonebook, select a contact and press:

Menu Item
Hear it

Making a Call

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Voice Command	Action and Description
call (someone [[a] name])	
dial [[a] number]	SYNC prompts you to say the numbers that you wish to dial. After you say the numbers, the system confirms it.

When the system has stated the number, you say any of the following:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(dial send)	This initiates the call.
(delete correct)	To erase the last spoken digit.
clear	To erase all spoken digits.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display and press **OK**.

Receiving a Call

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the accept call option in the audio display and pressing the **OK** button.
- Reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the reject call option in the audio display and pressing the **OK** button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Cell Phone Options During an Active Call

During an active call, you have extra menu features which become available, for example putting a call on hold.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select the option for more.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mic. off	Turn your vehicle's microphone off. To turn the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system numeric keypad, for example numbers for passwords.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Join calls	<p>Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multi-party or conference call.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the option for more. 2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the option for more. 3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the OK button.
Phonebook	<p>Access your phonebook contacts.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the option for more. 2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the OK button. 3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 4. Press the OK button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the OK button or dial button to call the selection.
Call history	<p>Access your call history log.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the option for more. 2. Scroll to the option until call history appears. Press the OK button. 3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 4. Press the OK button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the OK button or dial button to call the selection.

Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages as well as access cell phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as emergency assistance.

The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to the system. You must turn on the auto download feature if your cell phone supports it.

Note: *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the cell phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Dial a number	Dial a number using the audio system numeric keypad.
Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press the OK button to select.
Phonebook	<p>Access your downloaded phonebook.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the OK button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to quickly access an alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the keypad to jump in the list. 2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 3. Press the OK button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 4. Press the OK button or dial button to call the selection.
Call history	<p>Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the OK button to select. 2. Scroll to select either incoming calls, outgoing calls or missed calls. Press the OK button to make your selection. 3. Press the OK button or dial button to call the selection.
Speed Dial	Select one of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system numeric keypad.
Text messaging	Send, download and delete text messages.
BT Devices	Access the following option for Bluetooth device menu listings:
	Add
	Delete
	Conn.
	Discon.
	Master
Phone settings	View various settings and features on your cell phone.

Text Messaging

The system allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

Note: This is a cell phone dependent feature.

Receiving a Text Message

Note: This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.

Note: This is a speed-dependent feature and is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3.1 mph (5 km/h) or less.

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

To hear the message you can say:

Voice command	Action and Description
(listen to read) ([text] message)	Select this option to have the system read the message to you.

Using the screen you also have the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description								
Ignore	Select this option, or do nothing, and the message goes into your text message inbox.								
View	Select the view option to open the text message. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read to you, to view other messages. For additional options select: <table border="1"> <tr> <td>More...</td><td>If you select this option, use the arrow button to scroll through the following options:</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reply to sender</td><td>Press the OK button to access, and then scroll through a list of pre-defined messages to send.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Call sender</td><td>Press the OK button to call the sender of the message.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Forward msg.</td><td>Press the OK button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.</td></tr> </table>	More...	If you select this option, use the arrow button to scroll through the following options:	Reply to sender	Press the OK button to access, and then scroll through a list of pre-defined messages to send.	Call sender	Press the OK button to call the sender of the message.	Forward msg.	Press the OK button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.
More...	If you select this option, use the arrow button to scroll through the following options:								
Reply to sender	Press the OK button to access, and then scroll through a list of pre-defined messages to send.								
Call sender	Press the OK button to call the sender of the message.								
Forward msg.	Press the OK button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.								

Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.

2. Select the text messaging option, then press the **OK** button.

Choose from the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
New	When you select the option to send a text message, a list of pre-defined messages appear in the audio display. Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
View	Allows you to read the full message and in addition provides the option to have the message read out to you by the system. To go to the next message select the more option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.
Delete	Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cell phone). The audio display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted.
More...	Allows you to delete all messages or to manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cell phone.

Sending a Text Message

1. Select the send option when the desired selection is highlighted in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears and press the **OK** button again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with a pre-defined signature.

Note: *You can send text messages two ways. You can chose a contact from your phonebook, call history or by entering a phone number and selecting the text option from the audio display. You can also reply to a received message in the inbox.*

Note: *Only one recipient is allowed per text message.*

Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings

These are cell phone dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ringtone, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system will use this cell phone as the master when there is more than one cell phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all paired cell phones (not only for the active one) using the Bluetooth devices menu.
Phone status	See the cell phone name, provider name, cell phone number, signal level and battery level. When done, press the left arrow button to return to the cell phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your cell phone's). If your cell phone supports in-band ringing, your cell phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cell phone ringtone option. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the OK button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone. 2. Press the OK button to select.
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the OK button to turn the audible tone on or off.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook, e.g. add, delete, download. Press the OK button to select and scroll between the options in the table below.

To modify the phone book preferences, choose from the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Add contacts	Push the desired contacts on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the OK button to add more contacts from your phonebook.
Delete	When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the OK button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.
Download now	Press the OK button to select and download your phonebook to the system.
Auto-download	When automatic download is switched on, any changes, additions or deletions saved in the system since your last download are deleted. When automatic download is switched off, your phonebook will not be downloaded when your cell phone connects to the system. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your paired cell phone is connected to the system. Check or uncheck this option to automatically download your phonebook each time your cell phone connects to the system. Downloading times are cell phone dependent and quantity dependent.

Bluetooth Devices

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth devices. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options. It allows you to add, connect and delete devices and set a cell phone as primary.

Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the Bluetooth device option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Add	Pair additional cell phones to the system. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process. 2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual if necessary. 3. Select SYNC on your cell phone.

Menu Item	Action and Description
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phones and the vehicles display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.* When the option to set the cell phone as the primary cell phone appears, select either yes or no. Depending on the functionality of your cell phone, the system may ask you extra questions (for example, if you would like to download your phonebook). Select either yes or no to confirm your response.
Delete	After deleting a cell phone from the list, the cell phone can only be connected again by repeating the full pairing process. Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device.
Master	<p>The system attempts to connect with the primary cell phone every time you switch the ignition on. When a cell phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk.</p> <p>Set a previously paired cell phone as your primary cell phone. Select the master option to confirm the primary cell phone.</p>
Conn.	Connect a previously paired cell phone. You can only have one cell phone connected at a time to use the cell phone functionality. When another cell phone is connected, the previous cell phone will be disconnected from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cell phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cell phone. Select this option and confirm when asked to. After disconnecting a cell phone, it can be connected again without repeating the full pairing process.

*In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

System Settings

- Press the **MENU** button.
- Select the SYNC settings option, then press the **OK** button.
- Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to turn the Bluetooth interface of the system on or off. Select this option then press the OK button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. Return to the factory default settings.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored on the system (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. The display indicates when complete and the system takes you back to the previous menu.
Install on SYNC	Install applications or software updates you have downloaded. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB thumb drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the OK button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See Using Voice Recognition (page 305).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the OK button and use the up or down arrows to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrows to enter and leave a folder. Media content can be directly selected for playback from this menu.

Press the **MENU** button to enter the system menu.

SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

A list of available applications appears. Each application may have its own specific settings.

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press OK .

SYNC Emergency Assistance

WARNINGS



For this feature to work, your cell phone must have Bluetooth and be compatible with the system.



Always place your cell phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the cell phone which could prevent this feature from working correctly.



Unless the feature setting is switched on prior to a crash, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait for the system to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

Note: Before selecting this feature, you must read the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.

Note: When you switch this feature on or off, that setting applies for all paired cell phones. If you have turned this feature off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch on the ignition, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown, or both.

Note: Every cell phone operates differently. While this feature works with most cell phones, some cell phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

Note: Make sure you are familiar with the information about airbag deployment. See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 29).

Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Action
SYNC-Apps	Press OK .
Emerg. assist	Press OK . Select the option you require and press OK .

Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display.

If you switch off this feature, a dialog will appear in the display, which allows you to set a voice reminder.

Off with voice reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without voice reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Note: *This feature only works in countries or regions where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*

In the Event of a Crash

Note: *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to make an emergency call.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to make an emergency call.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant function button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

Note: *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

Note: *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

Note: *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

Note: *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.*

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for the latest details.

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

SYNC AppLink

The system enables voice and manual control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and manual controls.

Note: You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.

Note: iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.

Note: Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.

Note: For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.

Note: Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.

To Access Using the SYNC Menu

Scroll through the list of available applications and press **OK** to select an app. Once an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button to access the app menu. You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down. Press the left arrow button to exit the app menu.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press OK .
Find new Apps	Select this option if the app required is not listed.

Note: If a SYNC AppLink compatible app cannot be found, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.

To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Command	Description and Action
mobile (apps applications)	Say the name of the application after the tone. The application will start. While an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app.

The following voice commands are always available:

Command	Description and Action
[main menu] help	Use this command to hear a list of available voice commands.
mobile (apps applications)	The system will prompt you to say the name of the app to start it.
list [mobile] (apps applications)	The system will list all of the currently available mobile apps.
find [new] [mobile] (apps applications)	The system will search your connected mobile device for SYNC compatible apps.
(quit exit close)	Use this command followed by the name of the app.

You can also say the name of any SYNC compatible app to start it on SYNC. To see a list of the available voice commands for an app, say the name of an app followed by help. For example you could say "Spotify help".

Enabling and Disabling Push Notifications

Some apps can send push notifications. A push notification is an alert from an app running in the background and is delivered by voice, pop up or both. This may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	
SYNC-Settings	
All Apps	If push notifications are supported, this setting will be listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required.

Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

To use the system you must consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates, using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.

App Status

You can view the current status of an app in the settings menu. There are three possible statuses:

Message	Description and Action
Update needed	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.
Up-to-date	No update is required.
Updating...	The system is trying to receive an update.

Options in the settings menu:

Message	Description and Action
Request Update	If an update is required and you want to manually request the update, for example when you are in a Wi-Fi hotspot.
Disable Updates	Select this option to disable automatic updates.

App Permissions

Permissions are divided by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app including, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel consumption, engine speed, battery voltage, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, ambient temperature, date and time.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information, including, but not limited to: MyKey, seat belt status, engine speeds, braking events, brake pedal switch, acceleration, accelerator pedal position, clutch pedal switch, trip length, trip time, trip cost, percent engine on time, and percent of time at speed.

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state.

Note: You will only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.

Note: We are not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve us to provide to an app.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your media player through your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, for example artist or albums.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any media player including: iPod, Zune, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, for example MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Voice Command	Action and Description
(USB [stick] iPod MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands.

You do not need to say words that appear within square brackets. For example, for where (USB [stick] | iPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.

Note: NTFS file format is not supported.

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port

Note: If your media player has a power switch, make sure you switch on the device.

To Connect Using Voice Commands

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice button and when prompted say:

2. Press the **Media** button (next to the audio display) until an initializing message appears in the display.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Browse USB	Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the playback menu.

Choose from the following:

Menu Item
Play all
Playlists
Songs
Artists
Albums
Genres
Browse USB
Reset USB
Exit

What's Playing?

At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags of the current track, if populated.

Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(USB [stick] iPod MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; who plays this (what's | what is) playing, you must say; who plays this (what's or what is) playing.

Voice Command	Description and Action
pause	Pauses device playback.
play	Resumes device playback.
play [album] ____	
play all	Play all media on the device from the first track to the last.
play [artist] ____	
play [genre] ____	
play [playlist] ____	
next [track title song file podcast chapter episode]	Plays the next track on the current media.
previous [track title song file podcast chapter episode]	Plays the previous track on current media.
[play] (similar music more like this)	Creates a play list of similar genre to the one currently playing.
play [song track title file] ____	
repeat off	
repeat one [on]	Repeats the current track.
shuffle [all] [on]	Plays the current play list in a random order. (Not all devices support this command.)
shuffle off	
((who's who is) this who plays this (what's what is) playing [now] (what which) (song track artist) is this (who's who is) playing (what's what is) this)	At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the current track.

____ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles".

Examples of USB Commands

SYNC provides the user with many intuitive ways to find and play a song using voice. For example, if we have a song called "Penny Lane" from the album "Magical Mystery Tour" we can say the following to play this song:

- Play song "Penny Lane".
- Play "Penny Lane".

If we wanted to play the entire album, we can say:

- Play album "Magical Mystery Tour".
- Play "Magical Mystery Tour".

Bluetooth Audio

The system is also capable of playing music from your cellular phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth audio on, use the **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) or **Source** button, or press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
Bluetooth audio

Then any of the following:

Message	Description and Action
Options	This will enter the media menu.

Then any of the following:

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags

Voice Command
pause
play
next [track title song file podcast chapter episode]
previous [track title song file podcast chapter episode]

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music, for example by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat, and to find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
	are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

2. Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist and track or even to browse what is on your USB device.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select:

Message	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your playing device one at a time in numerical order.* 1. Press OK to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists from formats, ASX, M3U, WPL or MTP.* 1. Press OK to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press OK .
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track.* 1. Press OK to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press OK .

Message	Description and Action
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press OK to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press OK .
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by albums.* 1. Press OK to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired albums, and then press OK .
Genres	Sort indexed music by genre type.* 1. Press OK to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press OK .
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC; other saved files are not visible. 1. Press OK to select. 2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on your flash drive, and then press OK .
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

* You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the numeric keypad to jump in the list.

Using Voice Commands

You can access and view your USB songs using voice commands.

Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

Press the voice button and when prompted, say any of the following commands:

Voice Command
(browse search show) all (album albums)
(browse search show) all (artist artists)
(browse search show) all (genre genres)
(browse search show) all (playlist playlists)
(browse search show) all (song songs title titles file files track tracks)
(browse search show) album ____
(browse search show) artist ____
(browse search show) genre ____
(browse search show) playlist ____

Line In Audio

To access the Line in audio source say:

Voice Command
((line AV audio video) in AUX audio video)

USB 2 (If Equipped)

Your vehicle may come equipped with an additional USB port. If so, USB 1 is located at the front of the vehicle at the bottom of the instrument panel. USB 2 is located inside the storage compartment of the vehicle's center console.

You can plug in an additional USB device into the second USB port.

Note: SYNC only supports one connected iOS (Apple) devices at a time (whichever one you plug in first). When you connect a second iOS device, the systems charges it, but does not support playback from it.

Voice Commands for Audio Sources

Your voice system allows you to change audio sources with a simple voice command.



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
(music audio entertainment) [system]
Below are a few examples of voice commands you can use.
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] (AM medium wave) (auto-store AST autosest)
[tune [to]] (AM medium wave) 2
Bluetooth (audio stereo)
(disc CD [player]) play
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore AST autosest) preset ____
[tune [to]] FM 2
((line AV audio video) in AUX audio video)
Radio

Voice Command
(USB [stick] iPod MP3 [player])
((who's who is) this who plays this (what's what is) playing [now] (what which) (song track artist) is this (who's who is) playing (what's what is) this)
Help

Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Command
Radio
You can then say any of the following commands.
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] (AM medium wave) (auto-store AST autose)
[tune [to]] (AM medium wave) 2
[tune [to]] ((AM medium wave) ____ ____ [AM medium wave])
[tune [to]] (AM medium wave) preset ____
[tune [to]] (AM medium wave) 1 preset ____
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1

Voice Command
[tune [to]] FM (autostore AST autose)
[tune [to]] FM 2
[tune [to]] (FM ____ ____ [FM])
[tune [to]] FM (autostore AST autose) preset ____
[tune [to]] FM preset ____
[tune [to]] FM 2 preset ____
[tune [to]] preset ____
tune [radio]
Help

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Command
(disc CD [player]) play
You can then say any of the following commands.
pause
play
[play] next track
[play] previous track
[play change to] track [number] ____
repeat (track song) [on] *

Voice Command
repeat folder [on]
repeat off
(shuffle random mix) [on (tracks songs) [on]] *
(shuffle random mix) (CD [player] disc) [on]
(shuffle random mix) folder [on]
shuffle off

*You need to indicate to the system which track or folder to repeat or shuffle when using these commands.

Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 308).

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.
	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The system says "Phone-book down-loaded" but my SYNC phone-book is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
		Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch off the auto download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
	iPhone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Go to your cell phone's Settings. Go to the Bluetooth Menu. Make sure the connection status shows Not Connected. Press the blue circle to enter the next menu. Turn on Show Notifications. Turn on Sync Contacts.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC. Repeat these steps for every other Sync vehicle you are connected to. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC if it is unlocked. Replying to text messages using SYNC is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	<p>Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.</p> <p>Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the PHONE button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press OK.</p>
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and media issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure correctly insert the USB cable to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.

USB and media issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section.
		You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See Using Voice Recognition (page 305).

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
		The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press PHONE . Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").
My previous Bluetooth voice control system allowed me to control the radio, CD, and climate control systems. Why can I not control these systems with SYNC?	The focus of SYNC is to control your mobile devices and the content stored on them.	SYNC offers significant capability beyond the previous system such as dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

General		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, play artist Madonna).

AppLink issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC does not find any applications.	An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.	Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an "Exit" or 'Quit' option, select that then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting 'Apps,' then finding the particular app and choosing 'Force stop.' Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC.
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tab the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu.

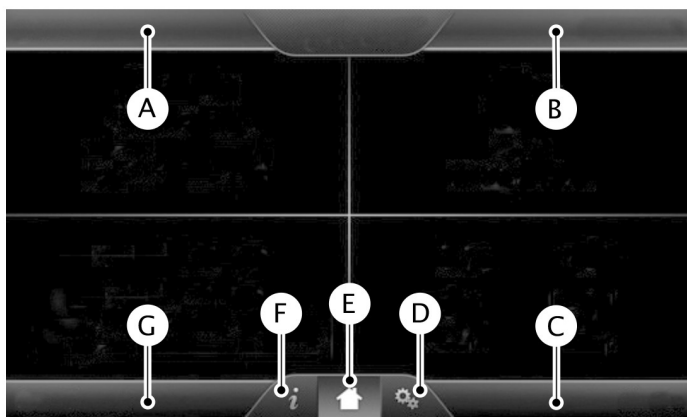
AppLink issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a bluetooth bug on some older versions of the Android OS that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you have not turned off bluetooth.	Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.
My iPhone phone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.	The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E161891

Item	Message
A	Phone
B	Navigation
C	Climate
D	Settings

Item	Message
E	Home
F	Information
G	Entertainment

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to several vehicle features and settings. The touchscreen provides easy interaction with your cellular phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as phone status or the climate temperature.

Note: *Some features are not available while your vehicle is moving.*

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

PHONE

Press to select any of the following:

Message
Phone
Quick Dial
Phonebook
History
Messaging
Settings

NAVIGATION

Press to select any of the following:

Message
My Home
Favorites
Previous Destinations
Point of Interest
Emergency
Street Address

Message
Intersection
City Center
Latitude/Longitude
Edit Route
Cancel Route

CLIMATE

Press the corresponding icons to control the following options:

- Driver Settings.
- Recirculated Air.
- Auto.
- Dual.
- Passenger Settings.
- A/C.
- Defrost.

SETTINGS



Press to select any of the following:

Message
Clock
Display
Sound
Vehicle
Settings
Help

HOME



Press to access your home screen. Depending on your vehicle's option package and software, your screens may vary in appearance from the descriptions in this section. Your features may also be limited depending on your market. Check with an authorized dealer for availability.

INFORMATION



Press to select any of the following:

Message
Traffic
Alerts
Calendar
Apps
Where Am I?

ENTERTAINMENT

Press to select any of the following:

Message
AM
FM
DAB *
CD
USB
BT Stereo
SD Card
Line In

* If equipped.

Using the Audio Controls

Depending on your vehicle, it may also have the following controls:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Power	Switch the media features on or off.
Vol:	Adjust the volume of playing media.
Seek	Use as you normally would in media modes.
Tune	Use as you normally would in media modes.
Eject	Eject a CD from the entertainment system.
Display	Press this button to switch the display screen off. Press again, or touch the screen to switch the display screen on.
Source	Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media modes.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Sound	Adjust the settings for:
	Bass
	Treble
	Midrange
	Set Balance and Fade
	DSP
	EQ Mode
	Speed Compensated Volume

Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use your steering wheel controls to interact with the touchscreen system.

- **VOL:** Control the volume of audio output.
- **Mute:** Mute the audio output.
- **Voice:** Press to start a voice session. Press again and hold to end a voice session.
- **SEEK and PHONE ACCEPT:**
 - While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
 - While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between stations or press and hold to fast seek.
 - While in phone mode, press to answer a call, or to switch between calls.

• **SEEK and PHONE REJECT:**

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
- While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between stations or press and hold to fast seek.
- While in phone mode, press to end a call, or to reject an incoming call.
- **Source:** Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media modes.
- **Sound:** Touch the control to adjust the sound settings. See **Settings** (page 351).

See **Steering Wheel** (page 56).

Cleaning the Touchscreen Display

Use a dry, clean, soft cloth. If dirt or fingerprints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

Support

For further support, contact an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

Safety Information

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.

- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 5 mph (8 km/h).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted Features	
System Functionality	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Videos, Photos and Graphics	Playing video.
Text Messages	Composing text messages.
	Editing preset text messages.
Navigation	Demo navigation route.

Privacy Information

When a cell phone connects to SYNC, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This includes the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. Use the log profile and other system data to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **Information Displays** (page 87).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where we can access system data are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available.

Using Voice Recognition

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice command session.

How to Use Voice Commands



The following are some of the voice commands that you can say at any time during a voice command session.

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
Main Menu
What Can I Say
Previous Page
Go Back
Help

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken voice commands.
- After pressing the voice command icon, wait until after the tone sounds and a message appears before saying a voice command. Any voice command spoken prior to this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice command icon.

Accessing a List of Available Voice Commands

To access a list of available voice commands you can do either of the following.

Using the touchscreen, press:

Menu Item
Settings
Help
Voice Command List

Using the steering wheel control, press the voice button and when prompted say one of the following:

Voice Commands
List of Commands
Radio List of Commands
Phone List of Commands
Voice Instructions List of Commands

Voice Command Settings

These allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction that uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Interaction Mode	Novice	In this mode the system provides detailed interaction and guidance.
	Advanced	This mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	The system uses these short questions to confirm your voice command. If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested. The system may still occasionally ask you to confirm a voice command.	
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are lists of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command.	
Media Candidate Lists		

Using the touchscreen, press the settings icon, then press:

Menu Item
Voice Settings
Voice Control
Select from the following:
Interaction Mode
Confirmation Prompts
Media Candidate Lists
Phone Candidate Lists
Voice Control Volume

Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options

The voice command system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is available only when the system displays a list of candidates generated during a voice command session. For example, this can be used when entering a street address or trying to call a contact from a cell phone paired to the system.

SETTINGS



E161968

Item	Menu Item
A	Clock
B	Display
C	Sound
D	Vehicle
E	Settings
F	Help

Clock



Under this menu, you can set the clock, access and adjust the display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Clock	Press the + or - to adjust the time. From this screen, you can also make other adjustments such as 12-hour or 24-hour mode, activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update new time zones. You can also switch the outside air temperature display off and on. It appears at the top center of the touchscreen, next to the time and date.

Note: You cannot manually set the date. Your vehicle's GPS does this for you.

Note: If the battery has been disconnected, your vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.

Display



You can adjust the display using the touchscreen or the voice button on the steering wheel controls.

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Display	

Then select from the following:

Mode	Allows you to switch the display off. It also allows you to set the screen to a certain brightness or have the system automatically change based on the outside light level. If you also select:	
	Auto	These features will allow you to adjust the dimming of your screen.
	Night	
Edit Wallpaper	Allows you to display the default photo or upload your own.	
Auto Dim	When set to On , lets you use the automatic dimming feature. When set to Off you are able to adjust the brightness of the screen.	
	Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.
Auto Dim Manual Offset	Allows you to adjust screen dimming as the outside lighting conditions change from day to night.	



To make adjustments using the voice button, press the button and when prompted, say:

Voice command
Display Settings

Note: Photographs with extremely large dimensions (such as 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.

The system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos.



To access, press:

Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

Note: You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos either from your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.

To upload your photos, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Display	
Edit Wallpaper	Follow the system prompts to upload your photographs.

Only the photograph(s), which meets the following conditions display:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: JPG, GIF, PNG, BMP.
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.
- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384.

Sound



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item
Settings
Sound
Then select from the following:
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
DSP occupancy
EQ Mode
Adaptive volume

Note: Your vehicle may not have all of these sound settings.

Vehicle



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item
Settings
Vehicle
Then select from the following:
Ambient light
Camera Settings
Enable Valet Mode

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

When you switch this feature on, ambient lighting illuminates footwells and cupholders with a choice of colors.

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Ambient light	

- You can then touch the desired color.
- Use the scroll bar to increase or decrease the intensity.
- To switch the feature on or off, press the power button.

Camera Settings



This menu allows you to access settings for your rear view camera.

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Camera Settings	
Then select from the following:	
Enhanced Park Pilot	
Rear Camera Delay	

You can find more information on the rear view camera system in another chapter. See **Parking Aids** (page 176).

Enable Valet Mode

Note: If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, contact an authorized dealer.



Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Enable Valet Mode	Then enter a four digit PIN twice, as prompted.
Continue	After you press Continue the system locks until you enter the PIN again.

Settings

Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

System



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
System	

Then select from the following:

Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in any of the selectable language options*.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
System Prompt Volume	Adjust the volume of voice prompts from the system.
Touch Screen Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Keyboard Layout	Have the touchscreen keyboard display in QWERTY or ABC format.
Install Applications	Install any downloaded applications or view the current software licenses.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

* The options include: English, Spanish, French, Portuguese, German, Italian, Dutch, Swedish, Polish, Turkish and Russian. Only four of these languages are available for voice input and output, depending on your location.

Voice Control



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	
Voice Control	

Then select from the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Interaction Mode	Standard interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	Have the system ask you short questions if it has not clearly heard or understood your request. Note: Even with confirmation prompts turned off, the system may occasionally ask you to confirm settings.
Media Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off.
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off.
Voice Control Volume	This allows you to adjust the system's voice volume level.

Media Player



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Media Player	

Then select from the following:

Autoplay	When this feature is on, the system automatically switches to the media source upon initial connection. This allows you to listen to music during the indexing process. When this feature is off, the system does not automatically switch to the inserted media source.
Bluetooth Devices	Select to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. You can also set a device as your favorite so that the system automatically attempts to connect to that device at every ignition cycle.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.
Gracenote® Management	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies metadata information for your music files. This overrides information from your device. This feature defaults to off.
Cover Art Priority	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies cover art for your music files. This overrides any art from your device. This feature defaults to Media Player.

Navigation



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Navigation	

Then select from the following:

Map Preferences	Switch breadcrumbs on and off.
	Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top.
	Switch the Parking POI notification on and off.
Route Preferences	Select shortest route, fastest route or ecological route as your preferred route. This route displays first.
	Always use preferred route. If set to yes, the system only calculates a single route. This speeds up your destination entry process.
	Select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated ecological route. This may incur a time penalty.
	Have the system avoid freeways.
	Have the system avoid toll roads.
	Have the system avoid ferries or car trains.

SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Have the system avoid tunnels.
Navigation Preferences	Have the system use guidance prompts.
	Have the system automatically fill in Country information.
	Hazard Spot Warning Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed.
Traffic Preferences	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.
	Switch traffic alert notifications on or off.
	Have the system display accident icons.
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.
	Have the system display closed roads.
	Have the system display road work icons.
	Have the system display incident icons.
	Have the system display icons for areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.
	Have the system display icons for areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.
	Have the system display any smog icons.
	Have the system display weather warning icons.
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
	Have the system display icons to recommend switching on your radio for traffic announcements.
Avoid Areas	Enter specific areas that you would like to avoid on planned navigation routes.

Phone



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Phone	
Then select from the following:	
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	Switch Bluetooth on and off.
Do Not Disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring inside your vehicle. With this feature turned on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside your vehicle.
Emergency Assistance	Switch on or turn off the Emergency Assistance feature. See Information (page 382).
Phone Ringer	Select the type of notification for phone calls - ring tone, beep, text to speech or silent.
Text Message Notification	Select the type of notification for text messages - alert tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Internet Data Connection	If compatible with your phone, you can adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to switch off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming, or query on connect. Press ? for more information.
Manage Phonebook	Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	Have the system alert you when in Roaming mode.

Wireless and Internet



Your system has a Wi-Fi feature that creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (such as personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files or play

games. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can also access the internet if you have a USB mobile broadband connection inside your vehicle, your phone supports personal area networking or if you park outside a wireless hotspot.

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Wireless & Internet	
Then select from the following:	
Wi-Fi Settings	Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode Turns the Wi-Fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure you switch it on for connectivity purposes.
	Choose a Wireless Network Allows you to use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.
	Gateway (Access Point) Mode Makes SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer when turned on. This forms the local area network within your vehicle for things, such as game playing, file transfer and internet browsing. Press ? for more information.
	Gateway (Access Point) Settings Allows you to view and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway.
	Gateway (Access Point) Devices List Allows you to view recent connections to your Wi-Fi system.
USB Mobile Broadband	Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must switch on your mobile broadband device on your personal computer before connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not display if the device is already on.) You can select the following:
	Country
	Carrier

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Phone Number
	User Name
	Password
Bluetooth Settings	Shows you the currently paired devices as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device. Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.
Prioritize Connection Methods	Choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to change order and have the system either always attempt to connect using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi.



The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Help



E142626

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Help	

Then select from the following:

System Information	Touchscreen system serial number
	Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
	Touchscreen system software version
	Navigation system version
	Map database version
	Gracenote® Database Information and Library version
View Software Licenses	View the licenses for any software and applications installed on your system.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Driving Restrictions	Certain features are not accessible when your vehicle is moving.	
Emergency Assistance	Switch on and off the Emergency Assistance feature. See Information (page 382).	
	In Case of Emergency (ICE) speed dial	Allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access if there is an emergency. The ICE contacts you select appear at the end of the Emergency Assistance call process.
	Edit	Select to access your phone-book and then select the desired contacts. The numbers then appear as options on this screen for the ICE 1 and ICE 2 buttons.
Voice Command List	View categorized lists of voice commands.	



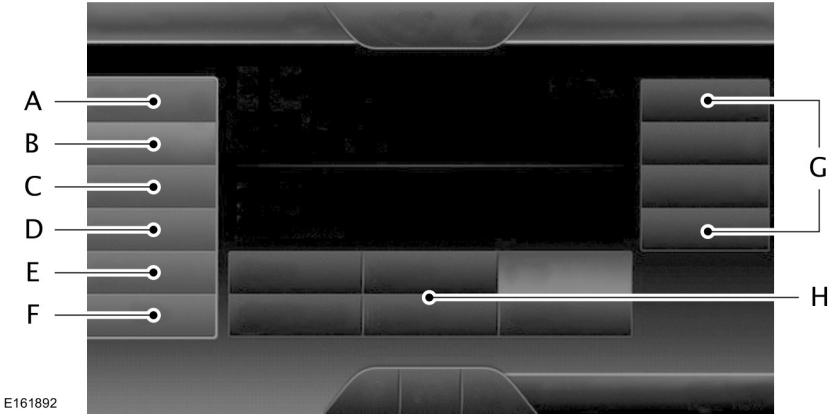
You can also access Help using the voice commands. The system provides allowable voice commands for the current mode.

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
Help

You can say help at any time to get assistance with commands, menus or other information.

ENTERTAINMENT



Message	Message and Description
A	AM
B	FM
C	DAB
D	CD
E	USB
F	Touch this button to scroll down for more options, such as SD Card, BT Stereo and Line In.

Message	Message and Description
G	These buttons provide additional controls for the radio or media source. See the AM/FM radio controls table for more information.
H	Radio memory presets and CD controls.

Note: Some features may not be available in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

AM/FM/DAB Radio



The following controls are available for AM/FM/DAB radio

Controls

Item	Action and Description	
AM FM DAB	Touch either tab to listen to the radio. To change between AM, FM and DAB presets, just touch the AM , FM or DAB tab.	
Presets	Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished.	
Scan	Touch this button to go to the next strong AM, FM or DAB radio station. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on.	
Information	(DAB only)	When the info button is pressed, the system shows the corresponding block number for the active DAB radio station. If you press the info button a second time the radio station name is displayed again.
Tune	For AM and FM only, touch this button to manually enter the desired station number. Touch Enter when you are done.	
TA	Turn on to receive traffic announcements.	
Browse	See a list of all currently available radio stations.	

Options

Menu Item	Action and Description
Sound Settings	Touch this button to adjust settings for:
	Bass
	Midrange
	Treble
	Set Balance and Fade
	DSP occupancy
	EQ Mode
	Adaptive volume
Radio Text	This allows you to view the information broadcast by FM stations.

Menu Item	Action and Description
AST	AST (Autostore) allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location.
News announcement	With news announcement option active, the system interrupts active audio source to provide incoming news announcements, if currently tuned station (or last tuned station in case of other media active) supports news.
Regional	With Regional option active, the system stays on the regional subprogram instead of switching to a different frequency with better reception.
Alternate Frequency	With alternative frequency option active, the system re-tunes to a different frequency with better reception for the same station.
Service Linking	With Service Linking active, the system automatically switches from DAB to FM, in case DAB becomes unavailable.

Note: Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.

Radio Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command	
Radio	
Then you can say a command similar to the following:	
FM	Say a frequency or preset.
DAB	Say a preset.
Off	
Help	

CD



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:

Menu Item
CD

Insert your CD then select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Repeat	Touch this button to repeat the currently playing track, all tracks on the disc or switch the feature off if already on.
Shuffle	Touch this button to play the tracks or entire albums in random order, or switch the feature off if already on.
Scan	Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of all available tracks.
More Info	Touch this button to see disc information.
Browse	Touch this button to look through all available CD tracks.

To adjust the Sound Settings, select:

Menu Item
Options
Sound Settings
Then any of the following:
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
DSP occupancy
EQ Mode
Adaptive volume

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

Note: Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice command
CD Player

When listening to a CD you can say many commands. Following are a few examples of what you can say.

Voice command
Play
Pause
Next Track
Previous Track
Help

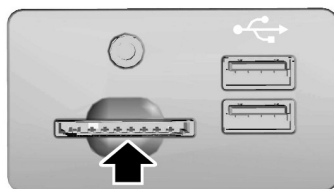
SD Card Slot and USB Port

The SD card slot and USB port are located in the Media Hub. See **Media Hub** (page 303).

SD Card

Note: Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.

Note: The navigation system also uses this card slot. See **Navigation** (page 389).



E175710

To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.



E142620

SD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

USB Port



E175711

To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Playing Music from Your Device



Note: *The system is capable of indexing up to 30,000 songs.*

Insert your device and select:

Message	Action and Description
USB SD Card	Once the system recognizes your USB or SD card you can then select from the following options:
Repeat	This feature replays the currently playing song or album.
Shuffle	Touch this button to play music on the selected album or folder in random order.
Similar Music	This feature allows you to choose music similar to what is currently playing.
More Info	Touch this button to see disc information, for example current track, artist name, album and genre.
Options	Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

Sound

Sound settings allows you to adjust settings for:

Message	Action and Description
Bass	
Midrange	
Treble	
Set Balance and Fade	
DSP	
EQ Mode	
Adaptive volume	
Media Player Settings	Allows you to select more settings, which is under Media Player. See Settings (page 351).

SYNC™ 2

Message	Action and Description
Device Information	Displays software and firmware information about the currently connected media device.
Update Media Index	Indexes your device when you connect it for the first time and each time the content changes (for example adding or removing tracks) to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Browse

This feature allows you to view the contents of the device. It also allows you to search by categories, for example genre, artist or album.

If you want to view song information, for example Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art.

You can also select:

Message	Action and Description
What's Playing?	To hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request.

USB and SD Card Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command	
SD Card	
USB	
Then commands such as the following:	
Browse	
Next Track	
Pause	
Play	Say the name of what you would like to listen to such as a band, song, album or playlist.

Voice command	
Play Artist ____	*
Play Song ____	*
Similar Music	
Help	

* ____ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles" or "Play song Penny Lane".

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, Zune™, plays from device players, and most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

It is also able to organize your indexed media from your playing device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

Bluetooth Audio

The system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled cell phone.



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:

Message
BT audio

Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands



The voice system allows you to control your media with a simple voice command. For example to change songs, press the voice button and follow the system prompts.

Line In

WARNINGS



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

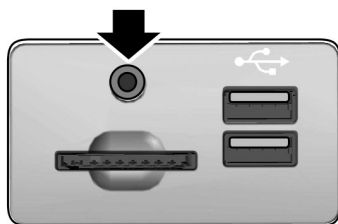
WARNINGS



For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.



Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.



E191800

Your auxiliary input jack allows you to play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers. The jack is located in your center console.

Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select **Line In**.

To use the auxiliary input jack feature, make sure that your portable music player is designed for use with headphones and that it is fully charged. You also need an audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at both ends.

1. Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position **P**.

2. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end into the adapter in one of the jack inside the center console.
3. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD (if there is a CD already loaded into the system).
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the maximum.
6. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Then select:

Menu Item	
Line In	<p>You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.</p> <p>Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station by switching back and forth between the controls.</p>

Troubleshooting

- Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. The jack only works correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
- Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio as this causes distortion and reduces sound quality.

- If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problem persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable media player.
- Control the portable media player in the same manner when used with headphones, as the auxiliary input jack does not provide control (such as Play or Pause) over the attached portable media player.

PHONE



Item	Menu Item
A	Phone
B	Speed dial
C	Phonebook
D	History
E	Messaging
F	Settings

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's user manual or the local Ford website.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use the phone features of SYNC is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your cell phone in a hands-free manner.

Touch the upper left corner of the touchscreen:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Pair phone	
Find SYNC	<p>Follow the on-screen instructions. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to On and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary.</p> <p>Select SYNC and a six-digit PIN appears on your device. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.</p> <p>When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone.</p> <p>The display indicates when the pairing is successful. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.</p>

Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and

that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your device's manual if necessary.

To pair a subsequent cell phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Settings	
Bluetooth Devices	
Add Device	
Find SYNC	<p>Follow the on-screen instructions. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to On and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary.</p> <p>Select SYNC and a six-digit PIN appears on your device. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.</p> <p>When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone.</p> <p>The display indicates when the pairing is successful. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.</p>

Making Calls



Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command
Call
Dial

You can say the name of a person from your phone book to call or say a number to dial. For example "Call Jenny" or "Dial 867-5309".



To end the call or exit phone mode, press and hold the phone button.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it is available.



To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.



To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Note: You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on the touchscreen to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	Touch this button to access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call. During an active call, you can also choose any of these options:
	Mute Call
	Hold Call
	Hands-free off
	Join Calls
	End
Speed dial	Select to call stored contacts.
Phonebook	Touch this button to access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phonebook. The system places the entries in alphabetical categories summarized at the top of the screen
	To turn on contact picture settings, if your device supports this feature, select:
	Phone
	Settings

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	Manage Phonebook	
	Display Photos from Phonebook	
	Certain smartphones may support transferring street addresses when listed with phonebook contact information. If your cell phone supports this feature, you can select and use these addresses as destinations and save them as favorites.	
Call History	Note: This is a cell phone-dependent feature. If your cell phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system. After you connect your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to SYNC, you can access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. You can also choose to save these to:	
	<table> <tr> <td>Favorites</td><td>Quick Dial</td></tr> </table>	Favorites
Favorites	Quick Dial	
Messaging	Send text messages using the touchscreen. See Text Messaging later in this section.	
Settings	Touch this button to access various phone settings, for example turning Bluetooth on and off, managing your phonebook and more. See Phone Settings later in this section	

Text Messaging

Note: Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.

Note: Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5.0 mph (8 km/h).

Note: SYNC does not download read text messages from your cell phone.

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms, for example LOL.

Touch the top left corner of the display, then select:

Menu Item
Phone
Messaging
Then any of the following:
Listen (speaker icon)
Dial
Send Text
View
Delete
Delete All

Composing a Text Message

Note: This is a speed-dependent feature. It is unavailable when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 mph (8 km/h).

Note: Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.

To compose and send a text message, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Messaging	
Send Text	Enter a cell phone number or choose from your phonebook.
Edit Text	Allows you to customize the pre-defined message or create a message on your own.
Send	Sends the message as it is.

You can then preview the message, verify the recipient as well as update the message list, and send it to a connected device, for example a USB drive.

Text Message Options

Messages
I'll call you back in a few minutes.
I just left, I'll be there soon.
Can you give me a call?
I'm on my way.
I'm running a few minutes late.
I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early.

Messages
I'm outside.
I'll call you when I get there.
OK
Yes
No
Thanks
Stuck in traffic.
Call me later.
LOL

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
View	To view the text message.
Listen	For SYNC to read the message to you.
Dial	To call the contact.
Ignore	To exit the screen.

Phone Settings

To enter the phone settings menu select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Settings	

Then any of the following:

Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	To turn Bluetooth off or on.
Do Not Disturb	If you want all calls to go directly to your voicemail and not ring in the vehicle. When this feature is on, text message notifications do not ring inside the cabin either.
Emergency Assistance	Switch the Emergency Assistance feature on or off.
Phone Ringer	Select the ring tone you want to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired cell phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or a silent notification.
Text Message Notification	Select a text message notification, if supported by your cell phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Internet Data Connection	If your cell phone is compatible, use this screen to adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press ? for more information.
Manage Phonebook	To access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your cell phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	To have the system alert you when your cell phone is in roaming mode.

Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following or a similar command:

Voice command
Call Voicemail
Listen to Message
Reply to Message
Pair Phone
help

INFORMATION



E161889

Item	Menu Item
A	Traffic
B	Notifications
C	Calendar
D	SYNC-Apps
E	Where Am I?

i If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Notifications

i If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the **i** (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.


Press Notifications, and then choose from any of the following services:

Menu Item	Action and Description
View	The complete message
Delete	The message
Delete All	Messages

This screen displays any system messages (such as an SD card fault).

Note: The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. After you read or delete the messages, the icon returns to white.


Calendar


 If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the I (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.


Press **Calendar**. You can view the current calendar by day, week or month.

Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

 For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth capable and compatible with the system.

 Always place your mobile phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working correctly.

 Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is set to on prior to a collision, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait

WARNINGS

for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Note: Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.

Note: When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the setting apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown, or both.

Note: Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialing 112 (the wireless emergency number that works in most European countries) through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

Note: *In case of an emergency, Emergency Assistance, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public security. Emergency Assistance does not implement the rescue operations. The local public security department deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.*

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 29). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 230). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

Setting Emergency Assistance On



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the I (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab. Then select:

Menu Item
Apps
Emergency Assistance
On



Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

If you switch off this feature, the dialog allows you to set a reminder.

Off with reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Note: *This feature only works in a European country or region where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*

In the Event of a Crash

Note: *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial 112.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.

- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

Note: *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

Note: *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

Note: *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

Note: *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.*

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.

- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a European country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for latest details.

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

Where Am I?

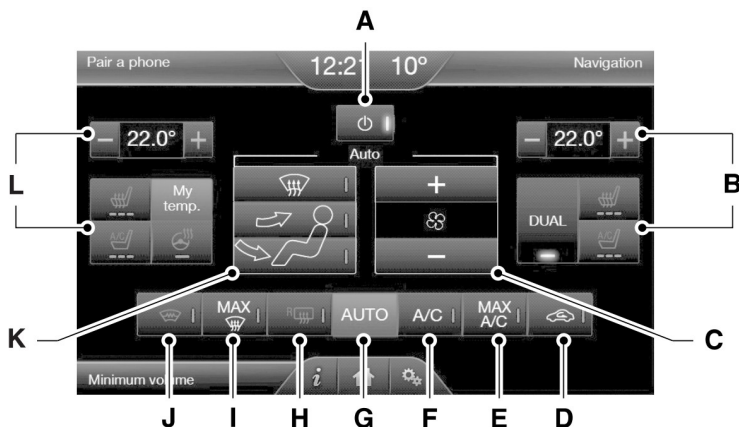
For vehicle location and information select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Information	
Help	
Then select:	
Where Am I?	View your vehicle's current location, if your vehicle is equipped with navigation. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, you do not see this button.

CLIMATE

Press the lower right corner on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from this screen.

Note: You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 351).



E191835

- A **Power:** Touch to switch the system off and on. Outside air cannot enter your vehicle when you switch off the system.
- B **Passenger settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.
Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on (if equipped).
Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to turn the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).
DUAL: Touch to switch on the passenger temperature control.
- C **Fan speed:** Touch + or - to adjust fan speed.
- D **Recirculated air:** Touch to switch the recirculated air on or off which may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior and help reduce odors from reaching the interior. Recirculated air also engages automatically when MAX A/C or MAX defrost is selected and may be engaged manually in any airflow mode except defrost. It may also turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C and MAX defrost to reduce fog potential.
- E **MAX A/C:** Touch to cool your vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C distributes air through instrument panel vents and may help reduce odors from entering your vehicle. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.
- F **A/C:** Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost.
- G **AUTO:** Touch to engage automatic operation, then set the temperature using the temperature control. The system automatically controls fan speed, airflow distribution, A/C on or off and the use of fresh or recirculated air.

- H **Heated rear window:** Turns the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).
- I **MAX Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield air vents and automatically turns the air conditioning on. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position, you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the fan speed and temperature control.
- J **Heated windscreen:** Press the button to clear the heated windscreen of thin ice and fog.
- K **Manual airflow distribution controls:**
Footwell and Defrost: Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents, and provides outside air to reduce window fogging.
Panel: Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
Panel and Floor: Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents.
Floor: Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents.
Defrost: Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents.
- L **Driver settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.
Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on (if equipped).
Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to turn the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).
Touch **MyTemp** to select your preset temperature setpoint. Touch and hold **MyTemp** to save a new preset temperature setpoint.
Touch the heated steering wheel icon to turn the heated steering wheel on and off (if equipped).

Climate Control Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following or a similar command:

Voice commands	
Climate On	
Climate Off	
Set temperature	Adjust the temperature to between 59.0°F (15°C) - 86.0°F (30°C)

NAVIGATION

Note: The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, contact an authorized dealer.

Note: The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

Destination Mode

To set a destination press the green corner of your touchscreen, then press:

Menu Item
Dest.
Choose any of the following:
My Home
Favourites
Previous Destinations
Place of interest
Emergency
Address
Junction
Town centre
Latitude/Longitude
Edit Route
Cancel Route

To set your destination, enter the necessary information into the highlighted

text fields (in any order).

For an address destination entry, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Go	Pressing this button makes the address location appear on the map.

To choose a previous destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Previous Destinations	The last 20 destinations you have selected appear.

Once you have chosen your destination press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set as Dest	To make this your destination. You can also choose to set this as a waypoint (have the system route to this point on the way to your current destination) or save it as a favorite. You can then choose your route from three different options.
	Fastest Route Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
	Shortest Route Uses the shortest distance possible.
	Eco Route Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
Avoid Areas	Your pre-set selections are considered when your route is calculated. For more information on these selections, see Setting Your Navigation Preferences later in this chapter.

To begin navigation press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start Route	You can cancel the route or have the system demo the route for you.

Menu Item	Action and Description
	During route guidance, you can press the talking bubble icon that appears in the upper right navigation corner (green bar) if you want the system to repeat route guidance information. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects when the vehicle is moving.

To set route preferences press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Route Prefs	In route preferences you can set preferences like avoiding motorways, tollroads, ferries and car trains or tunnels.

Note: If your vehicle is on a recognized road and you do not press the **Start Route** button, the system defaults to the Fastest Route option and begins guidance.

Michelin Travel Guide (If Equipped)

The Michelin travel guide is a service which provides additional information about certain places of interests (POI) such as restaurants, hotels and touristic sites (if available).

If you have paired your phone with the system, you can press the phone button to directly establish a call with the selected POI.

Note: Not all features are available in all languages and countries.

Places of Interest (POI) Categories

Main categories
Fuel Station
Parking
Food, Drink and Dining
Automotive

Main categories
Travel and Transportation
Shopping
Financial
Entertainment & Arts
Emergency
Recreation & Sports
Community
Government
Health & Medicine
Domestic Services

To expand these listings, press the + in front of the listing.

The system also allows you to sort alphabetically or by distance.

Setting Your Navigation Preferences



Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

To access the settings options, press:

Menu Item
Settings
Navigation
Then select any of the following:

Map Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Map Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Breadcrumbs	Display your vehicle's previously traveled route with white dots. You can switch this feature:	
	On	Off
Turn List Format	Have the system display your turn list:	
	Top to Bottom	Bottom to Top
Parking POI Notification	When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest display. Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. You can switch this feature:	
	On	Off

Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
Then select any of the following:			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Shortest Route	Fastest Route	Ecological

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Always use Preferred Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.
Avoid	When activated, you can to choose to have the system avoid motorways, toll roads, ferries, car trains and tunnels when planning your route.

Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Navigation Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Hazard Spot Warning	Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed.	
Guidance Prompts	Select the type of prompts the system uses.	
Auto-fill country	Have the system automatically fill in the country based on the information already entered into the system. You can switch this feature:	
	<table> <tr> <td>On</td><td>Off</td></tr> </table>	On
On	Off	

Traffic Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Traffic Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Avoid Traffic Problems	You can choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route.	
	<table> <tr> <td>Automatic</td><td>Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route. The system does not provide a traffic alert notification</td></tr> </table>	Automatic
Automatic	Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route. The system does not provide a traffic alert notification	

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
	Manual	Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before making the route deviation.
Traffic alert notification	Activate traffic alert notifications on or off.	
Traffic Icon Settings	You can choose to activate any of the following Traffic Icon Settings.	
	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.	
	Switch traffic alert notifications on or off.	
	Have the system display accident icons.	
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.	
	Have the system display closed roads.	
	Have the system display road work icons.	
	Have the system display incident icons.	
	Have the system display icons for areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.	
	Have the system display icons for areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.	
	Have the system display any smog icons.	
	Have the system display weather warning icons.	
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.	
	Have the system display icons to recommend switching on your radio for traffic announcements.	

Avoid Area

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Avoid Areas	Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you.
Then select any of the following:	
Add	Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To program an entry, press:
Delete	To delete a section choose the listing on the screen. The screen will change, then press:

Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features, such as town blocks, building footprints and railways.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage varies and improves with updated map releases.



E174016

Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes:



Heading up (2D map) This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 3 mph (5 km/h).



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map.

This viewing angle can be adjusted and the map can be rotated 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.

You can also select the following options:

Menu Items	
View	Switches between full map, street list and exit view in route guidance.
Menu	Displays a pop-up box that allows direct access to navigation settings.



Press the speaker button on the map to mute route guidance. When the light on the button illuminates, the feature is on. The speaker button appears on the map only when route guidance is active.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

Auto Zoom

Press the green bar to access map mode, then select the **+** or **-** zoom button to bring up the zoom level and Auto buttons on the touchscreen. When you press **Auto**, Auto Zoom turns on and **Auto** displays in the bottom left corner of the screen in the map scale. The map zoom level then

synchronizes with vehicle speed. The slower your vehicle is traveling, the farther in the map zooms in; the faster your vehicle is traveling, the farther the map zooms out. To switch the feature off, just press the **+** or **-** button again.

In 3D mode, rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.

The ETA box under the zoom buttons appears when a route is active and displays the distance and time to your destination. If the button is pressed, a pop up appears with the destination listed (and waypoint if applicable) along with mileage and time to destination. You may also select to have either the estimated time to reach your destination or your estimated arrival time.

Map Icons



Vehicle mark shows the current location of your vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.



Scroll cursor allows you to scroll the map; the fixed icon is in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.



Address book entry default icon(s) indicates the location on the map of an address book entry.

This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. You can select from any of the 22 icons available. You can use each icon more than once.



Home indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. You can only save one address from the Address

Book as your Home entry. You cannot change this icon.



POI (Point Of Interest) icons indicate locations of any point of interest categories you choose to display on the map. You can

choose to display three point of interest categories on the map at one time.



Starting point indicates the starting point of a planned route.



Waypoint indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents

the position of the waypoint in the route list.



Destination symbol indicates the ending point of a planned route.



Next maneuver point indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.



No GPS symbol indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may display

under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Set as Dest	Touch this button to select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then touch this button.	
Set as Waypoint	Touch this button to set the current location as a waypoint.	
Save to Favorites	Touch this button to save the current location to your favorites.	
POI Icons	Touch this button to select icons to display on the map. You can select up to three icons to display on the map at the same time. You can switch these features:	
	On	Off
Cancel Route	Touch this button to cancel the active route.	

View/Edit Route

Access these features when a route is active:

Menu Item
View Route
Edit Destination/Waypoints
Edit Turn List
Detour
Edit Route Preferences
Edit Traffic Preferences
Cancel Route

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to www.here.com. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership.

Navigation Voice Commands



When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls.

After the tone, say any of the following or a similar command:

Voice command
Destination
Zoom Out
Zoom In
Where Am I
help

The following commands can only be used when a navigation route is active:

Voice command
Reroute
Cancel Route
Show whole route
Repeat last instruction
Show route summary

One-shot Destination Street Address

To set a destination with voice commands, you can say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Destination address	The system asks you to say the full address. The system displays an example on-screen.

You can then speak the address naturally, such as "One two three four Main Street, Anytown".

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
		Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch off the auto download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
	iPhone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Go to your cell phone's Settings. Go to the Bluetooth Menu. Make sure the connection status shows Not Connected. Press the blue circle to enter the next menu.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turn on Show Notifications. • Turn on Sync Contacts. <p>Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC.</p> <p>Repeat these steps for every other Sync vehicle you are connected to. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC if it is unlocked.</p> <p>Replying to text messages using SYNC is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.</p>
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	<p>Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.</p> <p>Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the PHONE button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press OK.</p>
	This is a cell phone limitation.	<p>Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.</p>

USB and media issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure correctly insert the USB cable to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.

SYNC™ 2

USB and media issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".

SYNC™ 2

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section. You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See Using Voice Recognition (page 305).
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson". The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press PHONE . Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

General

Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
<p>The language selected for the instrument cluster and information display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).</p>		<p>SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.</p>
	<p>SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.</p>	<p>SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, play artist Madonna).</p>


SYNC with Touchscreen System Reset

The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC system.





Appendices

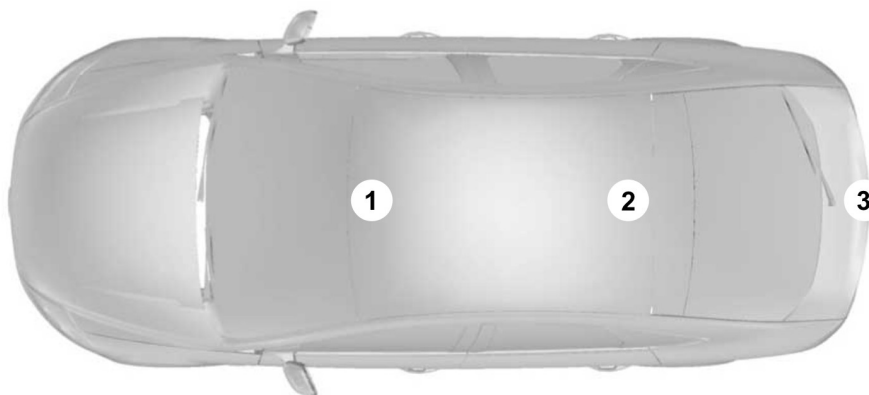
ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNINGS

 Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by an authorized dealer.

WARNINGS

-  The radio frequency transmitter equipment, for example cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, may only be fitted to your vehicle if they keep to the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.
-  Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.
-  Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.
-  Keep antenna and power cables at least 3.9 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags.



E170906

Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50 W	3
30-54	50 W	1, 2
68-87.5	50 W	1, 2
142-176	50 W	1, 2
380-512	50 W	1, 2
806-940	10 W	1, 2
1200-1400	10 W	1, 2
1710-1885	10 W	1, 2
1885-2025	10 W	1, 2

Note: After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition on.
- With the engine running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials,

Appendices

and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.

Appendices

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the

content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

Appendices

- **Internet-Based Services**

Components: The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such

Appendices

SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including

the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

No Liability for Certain Damages:

EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

Appendices

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

End User Notice

Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information

This system Ford SYNC contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

Read and follow instructions: Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

Keep User's Guide in vehicle: When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

General Operation

Voice Command Control: Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen: Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

Appendices

Volume Setting: Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

Use of Speech Recognition Functions: Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

Navigation Features: Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Distraction Hazard: Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Let Your Judgment Prevail: Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

Route Safety: Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

Potential Map Inaccuracy: Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

Emergency Services: Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the Telenav Software. Your use of the Telenav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the Telenav Software.

These terms and conditions represent the agreement ("Agreement") between you and Telenav, Inc. ("Telenav") with respect to the Telenav Software (including upgrades, modifications, or additions thereto) (collectively "Telenav Software"). All references herein to "you" and "your" means you, your employees, agents, and contractors, and any other entity on whose behalf you accept these terms and

Appendices

conditions, all of whom shall also be bound by this Agreement. Additionally, all of your account information, as well as other payment and personal information provided by you to Telenav (directly or through the use of the Telenav Software, is subject to Telenav's privacy policy located at <http://www.telenav.com>.

Telenav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the Telenav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the Telenav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the Telenav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the Telenav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the Telenav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the Telenav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold Telenav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the Telenav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the Telenav Software, to provide Telenav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform Telenav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, Telenav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the Telenav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the Telenav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the Telenav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the Telenav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the Telenav Software without the prior express written consent of Telenav; (c) remove from the Telenav Software, or alter, any of Telenav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or

copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Telenav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software; or (e) use the Telenav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the Telenav Software without advanced written permission of Telenav.

4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will Telenav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the Telenav Software. Telenav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the Telenav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the Telenav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the Telenav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the Telenav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR

Appendices

THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the Telenav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both Telenav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the

Telenav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to Telenav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the Telenav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Telenav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between Telenav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, Telenav retains all right, title and interest in and to the Telenav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and Telenav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the Telenav Software, you consent to receive from Telenav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the Telenav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. Telenav may provide such

Appendices

Notices by posting them on Telenav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the Telenav Software.

8.4

Telenav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including," and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation."

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this

Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 20xx. All rights reserved.

Permitted Use.

You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions.

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any

positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning.

The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty.

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty:

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Appendices

Disclaimer of Liability:

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control.

You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent

that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement.

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users.

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Appendices

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Appendices

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Appendices

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice:
“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory Notice

Ecuador “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011”
“source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”

Guade-
loupe,
French
Guiana
and
Marti-
nique
Mexico

“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Appendices

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Appendices

Austria "© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"

Croatia
Cyprus,
Estonia,
Latvia,
Lithuania,
Moldova,
Poland,
Slovenia
and/or
Ukraine

"© EuroGeographics"

France "source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"

Germany "Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"

Great Britain "Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"

Greece "Copyright Geomatics Ltd."

Hungary "Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."

Italy "La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."

Norway "Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"

Portugal "Source: IgeoE – Portugal"

Spain "Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"

Sweden "Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."

Switzerland "Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).

Appendices

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelmatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b)

with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

Appendices

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Appendices

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

Appendices

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

Vehicle with SYNC only United States and Mexico

FCC ID: KMHSG1G1

IC: 1422A-SG1G1

Mexico

Model: KMHSG1P1

NOM-121-SCT1-2009

The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vehicle with SYNC with Touchscreen/My Touch

FCC ID: KMHSYNCG2

IC: 1422A-SYNCG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Appendices

TYPE APPROVALS

RF Certification Logos for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s)

Schrader AG2SZ4 Numero de Registro
CNC: H-13498

E207816

Argentina

TRA
REGISTERED NO:ER0130238/14
DEALER NO:DA0047074/10

E207817

Abu Dhabi, Dubai



E197509



E202555

Brazil

Herby, Schrader Electronics UK Ltd., declares that this TPMS is in compliance with the essential requirements and other provisions of directive 1999/5/EC. The declaration of conformity may be consulted at emcteam@schrader.co.uk

E207818

European Union EU

Kingdom of Jordan Type approval for tyre pressure sensor.
Model: AG2SZ4
Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics
Type Approval Number: TRC/LPD/2014/56

E207819

Jordan

RAQP/33A/0514/S/(14-0847)

E207820

Malaysia



E197811

Moldova

Appendices

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098
ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

E207821

Morocco



Type Approved

NTC

No:ESD-1408639C

E198001

Philippines



E197844

Serbia

Complies with
IDA Standards
DA 00461

E207822

Singapore



E198002

South Africa

TA-2014/064

Approved



E203899



E203879

Taiwan



Schrader Electronics цім стверджуе, що
обладнання Радіопередавач моделі AG2S24

системи контролю тиску в шіні
автомобіла відповідае вимогам Технічнаго
рэгламенту радыёабладнання і

тэлекамунікацыйнаго кінцавога
(тэрмінальнаго) абладнання (Постанова КМУ

№ 679 від 24 червня 2009 р.) Декларація

відповідності знаходиться на сайті Schrader

Electronics та надається за запитом на електронну адресу doc.request@schrader.co.uk

E198009

Ukraine

Index

A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	111
About This Manual.....	7
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	168
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	168
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	10
ACC	
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	190
Active Park Assist.....	180
Deactivating the Active Park Assist Feature.....	184
Parallel Parking, Perpendicular Parking, Park Out Assist.....	180
Troubleshooting the System.....	184
Adaptive Headlamps.....	68
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column.....	56
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column.....	56
Easy Entry and Exit Feature.....	57
End of Travel Position.....	57
Memory Feature.....	57
AFS	
See: Adaptive Headlamps.....	68
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	111
Air Vents.....	111
Center Air Vents.....	111
Side Air Vents.....	112
Alarm	
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	53
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	52
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm.....	51
All-Wheel Drive.....	163
Ambient Lighting.....	71
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	53
Alarm System.....	53
Arming the Alarm.....	55
Disarming the Alarm.....	55
Full and Reduced Guard.....	54
Triggering the Alarm.....	54
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	52
Alarm System.....	52
Arming the Alarm.....	53
Disarming the Alarm.....	53
Full and Reduced Guard.....	52
Triggering the Alarm.....	52
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm.....	51
Arming the Alarm.....	51
Disarming the Alarm.....	51
Appendices.....	407
At a Glance.....	11
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	86
Headlamps On Warning Chime.....	86
Key in Ignition Warning Chime.....	86
Keyless Warning Alert.....	86
Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....	86
Audio Control.....	57
MEDIA.....	57
Seek, Next or Previous.....	57
Audio Input Jack.....	302
Audio System.....	291
General Information.....	291
Audio Troubleshooting.....	303
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/ SYNC.....	292
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2/ Premium AM/FM/CD.....	295
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2/Sony AM/FM/CD.....	296
Menu Structure.....	297
Autolamps.....	64
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps.....	64
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)/Sony Audio System.....	116

Index

Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	114
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Triple Zone Automatic Temperature Control.....	118
Automatic High Beam Control.....	65
Activating the System.....	66
Manually Overriding the System.....	66
Automatic Transmission.....	159
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning.....	162
Emergency Park Position Release Lever.....	161
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow.....	162
Selector Lever Positions.....	159
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission.....	160
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	249
Auto-Start-Stop.....	150
Limitations of Use.....	150
Switching the System On and Off.....	151
Using Auto-Start-Stop Automatic Transmission.....	150
Using Auto-Start-Stop Manual Transmission.....	150
Autowipers.....	60
Auxiliary Power Points.....	139
12 Volt DC Power Point.....	139
230 Volt Power Point.....	139
AWD See: All-Wheel Drive.....	163

B

Blind Spot Information System.....	203
Blind Spot Information System (BLIS™) with Cross Traffic Alert.....	203
Bonnet Lock See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	243
Brake Fluid Check.....	249
Brakes.....	168
General Information.....	168

Breaking-In.....	227
Brakes and Clutch.....	227
Engine.....	227
Tires.....	227
Bulb Specification Chart.....	257

C

Cabin Air Filter.....	123
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	285
Capacities.....	285
Specifications.....	286
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	288
Capacities.....	289
Specifications.....	289
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	287
Capacities.....	287
Specifications.....	288
Capacities and Specifications.....	279
Cargo Nets.....	215
Cargo Net - Cargo Floor Net.....	215
Cargo Net - Loadnet.....	215
Car Wash See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	259
Catalytic Converter.....	155
Driving with a Catalytic Converter.....	155
Center Console.....	141
Changing a Bulb.....	254
Front Fog Lamp.....	254
Headlamp.....	254
LED Lamps.....	255
License Plate Lamp.....	257
Rear Direction Indicator.....	255
Rear Fog Lamp.....	257
Reversing Lamp.....	255
Changing a Fuse.....	242
Fuses.....	242
Changing a Road Wheel.....	270
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information.....	270
Tire Change Procedure.....	271
Changing the 12V Battery.....	250
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	251
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	252
Service Position.....	252

Index

Checking MyKey System Status.....	40	Digital Radio.....	299
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	251	General Information.....	299
Childminder Mirror.....	76	Using Digital Audio Broadcast and SYNC with Touchscreen.....	301
Child Safety.....	18	Using Digital Audio Broadcast on a Non-Touchscreen.....	300
Child Safety Locks.....	25	Direction Indicators.....	69
Electric Child Safety Locks.....	25	Dog Guard.....	218
Child Seat Positioning.....	21	Installing behind the front seats.....	218
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	260	Installing behind the rear seats.....	219
Cleaning the Exterior.....	259	DPF See: Diesel Particulate Filter.....	147
Body Paintwork Preservation.....	259	Drive Control.....	212
Cleaning the Chrome Trim.....	259	Adaptive Steering.....	213
Cleaning the Headlamps.....	259	Driver Select Suspension.....	212
Cleaning the Rear Window.....	259	Driver Airbag.....	29
Cleaning the Interior.....	259	Driver Alert.....	197
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens.....	259	PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION.....	197
Rear Windows.....	260	USING DRIVER ALERT.....	198
Safety Belts.....	259	Driver Knee Airbag.....	31
Clearing All MyKeys.....	39	Driving Aids.....	196
Climate.....	386	Driving Hints.....	227
Climate Control Voice Commands.....	388	Driving Through Water.....	228
Climate Control.....	111	DRL See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	65
Principle of Operation.....	111	E	
Climate Controlled Seats.....	138	Economical Driving.....	227
Cooled Seats.....	138	Accessories.....	228
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission.....	249	Anticipation.....	228
Cold Weather Precautions.....	228	Efficient Speed.....	228
Coolant Check See: Engine Coolant Check.....	248	Electrical Systems.....	228
Cornering Lamps.....	69	Gear Shifting.....	227
Creating a MyKey.....	38	Tire Pressures.....	227
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings.....	38	Electric Parking Brake.....	169
Cruise Control.....	58	Applying the Electric Parking brake.....	169
Principle of Operation.....	189	Battery With No Charge.....	171
Type 1.....	58	Parking On a Hill (Vehicles With a Manual Transmission).....	169
Type 2.....	58	Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	170
Cruise control See: Using Cruise Control.....	189	Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	407
D		End User License Agreement.....	408
Data Recording.....	9	SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA).....	408
Daytime Running Lamps.....	65	Engine Block Heater.....	148
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	147	Using the Engine Block Heater.....	149
Regeneration.....	147		

Index

Engine Coolant Check.....	248
Adding Engine Coolant.....	248
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	51
Engine Oil Check.....	247
Adding Engine Oil.....	248
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L	
EcoBoost™.....	247
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi	
(DW) Diesel.....	247
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	247
Entertainment.....	365
AM/FM/DAB Radio.....	365
Bluetooth Audio.....	372
CD.....	368
Line In.....	372
SD Card Slot and USB Port.....	369
Supported Media Players, Formats and	
Metadata Information.....	372
EPB	
See: Electric Parking Brake.....	169
Event Data Recording	
See: Data Recording.....	9
Exterior Mirrors.....	73
Auto-Dimming Feature.....	75
Auto-Folding Mirrors.....	74
Blind Spot Monitor.....	75
Direction Indicator Mirrors.....	75
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	73
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	75
Loose Mirror.....	74
Memory Mirrors.....	75
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	73
Power-Folding Mirrors.....	74
Reverse Mirror Dipping.....	75

F

Fastening the Safety Belts.....	26
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....	27
First Aid Kit.....	230
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	261
Floor Mats.....	228
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	67

Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	67
Front Exterior Overview.....	11
Front Fog Lamps.....	67
Front Parking Aid.....	177
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	177
Front View Camera.....	212
Using the Front View Camera.....	212
Fuel and Refueling.....	152
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	290
Fuel Consumption.....	157
Calculating Fuel Economy.....	157
Filling the Fuel Tank.....	157
Fuel Filler Funnel Location - Vehicles	
With: Spare Wheel.....	153
Fuel Filler Funnel Location - Vehicles	
With: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	153
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	153
Long-Term Storage.....	153
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	153
Long-Term Storage.....	153
Fuel Shutoff.....	230
Fuses.....	233
Fuse Specification Chart.....	233
Passenger Compartment Fuse	
Panel.....	239
Power Distribution Box.....	233

G

Gauges.....	79
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	81
Fuel Gauge.....	81
Information Display.....	80
Type 1 and 2.....	79
Type 3.....	80
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	33
Global Opening and Closing.....	73
Closing the Windows.....	73
Opening the Windows.....	73

H

Hazard Warning Flashers.....	230
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	65
Headlamp Leveling.....	67
Headlamp Washers.....	62

Index

Head Restraints.....	125	Information Messages.....	96
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	126	Active Park.....	96
Tilting Head Restraints.....	126	Adaptive Cruise Control.....	97
Heated Seats.....	137	Airbag.....	97
Heated Steering Wheel.....	59	Alarm.....	98
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	123	All-Wheel Drive.....	98
Heated Exterior Mirror.....	123	Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	98
Heated Rear Window.....	123	Automatic High Beam Control.....	99
Heated Windshield.....	123	Auto Start-Stop.....	99
Heating		Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic	
See: Climate Control.....	111	Alert System.....	100
Hill Start Assist.....	171	Climate Control.....	100
Switching the System On and Off.....	172	Diesel Engine.....	100
Using Hill Start Assist.....	172	Doors and Locks.....	101
Hints on Controlling the Interior		Driver Alert.....	101
Climate.....	119	Electronic Stability Control.....	101
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....	121	Engine.....	102
General Hints.....	119	Fuel.....	102
Heating the Interior Quickly.....	120	Hill Start Assist.....	102
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	121	Keys and Keyless Entry.....	103
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	121	Lane Keeping System.....	104
Side Window Defogging in Cold		Maintenance.....	104
Weather.....	122	MyKey.....	105
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock		Park Aid.....	106
Brakes.....	168	Park Brake.....	106
Hood Lock		Power Steering.....	107
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	243	Pre-Collision Warning System.....	107
		Seats.....	107
		Starting System.....	108
		Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	108
		Towing.....	109
		Traction Control.....	109
		Transmission.....	109
Ignition Switch.....	142	Installing Child Seats.....	18
Information Display Control.....	58	Attaching a Child Seat With a Support	
Information Display Control Features.....	59	Leg.....	21
Information Displays.....	87	Attaching a Child Seat with Top	
General Information.....	87	Tethers.....	20
Information.....	382	Booster Seats.....	19
Calendar.....	383	Child Seats for Different Mass Groups.....	18
Emergency Assistance.....	383	ISOFIX and iSize Anchor Points.....	20
Notifications.....	382	Instrument Cluster.....	79
		Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	65
		Instrument Panel Overview - LHD.....	15
		Instrument Panel Overview - RHD.....	16
		Interior Lamps.....	70
		Front Interior Lamp.....	70
		Rear Interior Lamp.....	71

Index

Interior Mirror.....	75
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	76
Introduction.....	7

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	231
To Connect the Booster Cables.....	231
To Start the Engine.....	231

K

Keyless Entry.....	48
Disabled Passive Keys.....	49
General Information.....	48
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	50
Locking Your Vehicle.....	49
Passive Key.....	48
Unlocking Your Vehicle.....	49
Keyless Starting.....	142
Ignition Modes.....	143
Keys and Remote Controls.....	33

L

Lane Keeping System.....	199
Switching the System On and Off.....	199
Lighting Control.....	63
Headlamp Flasher.....	64
High Beams.....	63
Lighting.....	63
General Information.....	63
Load Carriers	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	217
Load Carrying.....	214
General Information.....	214
Locking and Unlocking.....	43
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside.....	44
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key Blade.....	44
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....	44
Power Door Locks.....	43
Remote Control.....	43
Locks.....	43
Luggage Anchor Points.....	214

Luggage Covers.....	217
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	270
Lug Nuts.....	278

M

Maintenance.....	243
General Information.....	243
Manual Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Manual Temperature Control (EMTC).....	112
Manual Liftgate.....	45
Closing the Liftgate.....	45
Opening the Liftgate.....	45
Manual Seats.....	127
Manual Transmission.....	159
Selecting Reverse Gear.....	159
Media Hub.....	303
Memory Function.....	129
Easy Entry and Exit Feature.....	130
Linking a Preset Position to your Remote Control or Keyless Entry Key Fob.....	130
Saving a PreSet Position.....	130
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	87
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	123
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	72
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	10
Moonroof - Vehicles With: Panoramic Roof Opening Panel.....	78
Bounce-Back.....	78
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	78
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	41
MyKey™.....	37
Principle of Operation.....	37

Index

N

Navigation.....	389
Destination Mode.....	389
Map Mode.....	395
Michelin Travel Guide.....	391
Navigation Map Updates.....	398
Navigation Voice Commands.....	398
Places of Interest (POI) Categories.....	391
Quick-touch Buttons.....	397
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....	391

O

Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	247
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	243
Closing the Hood.....	244
Opening the Hood.....	243
Overhead Console.....	141

P

Parking Aids.....	176
Principle of Operation.....	176
Passenger Airbag.....	30
.....	30
Switching the Passenger Airbag Off.....	30
Switching the Passenger Airbag On.....	31
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	51
Arming the Engine Immobilizer.....	51
Coded Keys.....	51
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer.....	51
Principle of Operation.....	51
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	51
Phone.....	374
Making Calls.....	376
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones.....	376
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First	
Time.....	375
Phone Menu Options.....	377
Phone Settings.....	380
Phone Voice Commands.....	381
Receiving Calls.....	377
Text Messaging.....	378
Post-Crash Alert System.....	232

Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	43
Power Liftgate.....	46
Obstacle Detection.....	48
Opening and Closing the Liftgate.....	46
Setting the Liftgate Open Height.....	47
Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	47
Power Seats.....	127
Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active	
Motion	128
Power Lumbar.....	128
Power Windows.....	72
Accessory Delay.....	73
Bounce-Back.....	72
One-Touch Down.....	72
One-Touch Up.....	72
Window Lock.....	72
Pre-Collision Assist.....	208
Using the Pre-Collision Assist	
System.....	209

R

Rear Exterior Overview.....	12
Rear Fog Lamps.....	67
Rear Parking Aid.....	176
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	177
Rear Passenger Climate Controls.....	122
Rear Seats.....	131
Creating a Level Load Floor.....	137
EasyFold™ Folding Seat	135
Second Row Seats.....	131
Third Row Seats.....	136
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	214
In-Floor Storage - Second Row.....	214
Load Floor Storage.....	215
Rear View Camera.....	186
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	186
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	186
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	61
Rear Window Washer.....	62
Rear Window Wiper.....	61
Reduced Engine Performance.....	227
Refueling.....	155

Index

Remote Control.....	33	Snow Chains	
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	35	See: Using Snow Chains.....	266
Memory Feature.....	36	Speed Control	
Passive Key.....	33	See: Cruise Control.....	189
Remote Flip Key.....	33	Speed Limiter.....	196
Using the Key Blade.....	34	Principle of Operation.....	196
Removing a Headlamp.....	253	Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter	196
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	260	Using the System.....	196
Replacement Parts		Stability Control.....	174
Recommendation.....	10	Principle of Operation.....	174
Collision Repairs.....	10	Starter Switch	
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical		See: Ignition Switch.....	142
Repairs.....	10	Starting a Diesel Engine.....	147
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	10	Cold or Hot Engine.....	147
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote		Failure to Start.....	147
Control.....	36	Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	144
Roadside Emergencies.....	230	Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	145
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	217	Failure to Start.....	145
Towbar Carriers.....	218	Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	147
Running-In		Important Ventilating Information.....	147
See: Breaking-In.....	227	Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is	
Running Out of Fuel.....	153	Moving.....	146
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel		Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is	
Container.....	154	Stationary.....	146
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	154	Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....	144
S		Vehicles with Keyless Start.....	144
Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	27	Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	142
Safety Belt Minder.....	28	General Information.....	142
Rear Safety Belt Minder.....	28	Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With:	
Switching the Safety Belt Minder Off.....	28	Keyless Vehicle System.....	143
Safety Belts.....	26	Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	143
Safety Precautions.....	152	Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles Without:	
Seats.....	125	Keyless Vehicle System.....	143
Security.....	51	Steering Wheel.....	56
Settings.....	351	Storage Compartments.....	141
Clock.....	352	Sunroof	
Display.....	352	See: Moonroof - Vehicles With: Panoramic	
Settings.....	356	Roof Opening Panel.....	78
Sound.....	354	Sun Shades - Vehicles With: Panoramic	
Vehicle.....	354	Roof Panel.....	77
Side Airbags.....	31	Bounce-Back.....	77
Side Curtain Airbags.....	31	Opening and Closing the Sun Shade.....	77
Side Sensing System.....	178	Sun Shade Relearning.....	77
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	179	Sun Visors.....	76
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	125	Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....	76
		Supplementary Restraints System.....	29
		Principle of Operation.....	29

Index

Switching Off the Engine.....	148
Vehicles With a Turbocharger.....	148
Symbols Glossary.....	7
SYNC™ 2.....	344
General Information.....	344
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....	319
In the Event of a Crash.....	321
Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off.....	320
SYNC AppLink.....	323
SYNC Emergency Assistance.....	320
SYNC™.....	304
General Information.....	304
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	334

T

Switching Off the Engine.....	148
Vehicles With a Turbocharger.....	148
Symbols Glossary.....	7
SYNC™ 2.....	344
General Information.....	344
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....	319
In the Event of a Crash.....	321
Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off.....	320
SYNC AppLink.....	323
SYNC Emergency Assistance.....	320
SYNC™.....	304
General Information.....	304
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	334
T	
Tailgate	
See: Manual Liftgate.....	45
See: Power Liftgate.....	46
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	279
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	261
Checking the Tire Pressure.....	264
General Information.....	261
Inflating the Tire.....	262
Using the Temporary Mobility Kit.....	261
Tire Care.....	264
Tire Rotation.....	265
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	261
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	266
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	267
How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures.....	267
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	268
Tire Pressures.....	276
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	261
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	261
Tow Ball.....	222
Driving with a Trailer.....	223
Maintenance.....	223
Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm.....	222
Tow Ball Bike Carrier.....	223
Towbar Dimensions - Galaxy.....	283
Maximum Static Vertical Load.....	284
Towbar Dimensions - S-MAX.....	281
Maximum Static Vertical Load.....	282
Towing a Trailer.....	221
Towing Points.....	224
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission.....	224
Emergency Towing.....	224
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....	225
Towing.....	221
Traction Control.....	173
Principle of Operation.....	173
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	207
Principle of Operation.....	207
Using the System.....	207
Trailer Sway Control.....	222
Transmission.....	159
Transmission	
See: Transmission.....	159
Type Approvals.....	430
RF Certification Logos for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s).....	430
U	
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	244
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	246
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	245
Unique Driving Characteristics.....	150
USB Port.....	303

U

Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	244
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	246
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	245
Unique Driving Characteristics.....	150
USB Port.....	303

Index

Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	190	Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	308
Automatic Cancellation.....	193	Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone	
Blocked Sensor.....	194	Menu.....	312
Canceling the Set Speed.....	191	Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings.....	315
Changing the Set Speed.....	191	Bluetooth Devices.....	317
Detection Issues.....	194	Cell Phone Options During an Active	
Following a Vehicle.....	192	Call.....	311
Hilly Condition Usage.....	193	Cell Phone Voice Commands.....	309
Overriding the System.....	193	Making a Call.....	310
Resuming the Set Speed.....	191	Pairing a Cell Phone For the First	
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....	191	Time.....	308
Setting the Gap.....	192	Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones.....	309
Switching the System Off.....	191	Receiving a Call.....	311
Switching the System On.....	190	Text Messaging.....	314
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	195	Using Traction Control.....	173
System Not Available.....	194	Switching the System Off Using a	
Using All-Wheel Drive.....	163	Switch.....	173
Driving In Special Conditions With		Switching the System Off Using the	
All-Wheel Drive (AWD).....	163	Information Display Controls.....	173
Using Cruise Control.....	189	System Indicator Lights and	
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	189	Messages.....	173
Switching Cruise Control On.....	189	Using Voice Recognition.....	305
Using MyKey With Remote Start		Helpful Hints.....	305
Systems.....	41	Initiating a Voice Session.....	306
Using Snow Chains.....	266	System Interaction and Feedback.....	306
Using Stability Control.....	175	Using Winter Tires.....	266
AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™			
(RSC®).....	175		
Using Summer Tires.....	265		
Using SYNC™ With Your Media			
Player.....	326		
Accessing Your USB Song Library.....	330		
Bluetooth Devices and System			
Settings.....	334		
Connecting Your Media Player to the USB			
Port.....	326		
Line In Audio.....	332		
Media Menu Features.....	329		
Media Voice Commands.....	327		
USB 2.....	332		
Using Voice Commands.....	331		
Voice Commands for Audio Sources.....	332		
What's Playing?.....	327		

V

Vehicle Care.....	259
Vehicle Dimensions - Galaxy.....	280
Vehicle Dimensions - S-MAX.....	279
Vehicle Identification Number.....	285
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	284
Vehicle Interior Overview.....	14
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	111
Vents	
See: Air Vents.....	111
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	285
Voice Control.....	58

Index

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	82
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	82
Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp.....	82
Automatic High Beam Lamp.....	82
Auto Start-stop.....	82
Battery Warning Lamp.....	82
Blind Spot Monitor Indicator.....	82
Brake System Warning Lamp.....	82
Cruise Control.....	83
Direction Indicator.....	83
Door Ajar.....	83
Electric Park Brake.....	83
Engine Coolant Temperature.....	83
Engine Oil Warning Lamp.....	83
Fasten Safety Belt Warning Lamp.....	83
Front Airbag Warning Lamp.....	83
Front Fog Lamps Indicator.....	83
Frost Warning Lamp.....	83
Fuel Operated Heater Enabled.....	84
Fuel Operated Heater Operating.....	84
Glow Plug Indicator.....	84
Headlamp and Parking Lamp Indicator.....	85
Heads Up Display.....	84
High Beam Indicator.....	84
Hill Start Assist Indicator.....	84
Hood Ajar.....	84
Lane Keeping Aid.....	84
Liftgate Ajar.....	84
Low Beam Malfunction.....	84
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....	84
Low Tyre Pressure Warning.....	84
Low Washer Fluid.....	85
Powertrain Fault.....	85
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator.....	85
Service Engine Soon.....	85
Shift Indicator.....	85
Speed Limiter.....	85
Stability Control Off Indicator.....	85
Stability Control Warning Lamp.....	86
Traffic Sign Recognition No Passing.....	86
Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Limit.....	86
Water-In-Fuel.....	86
Warning Triangle.....	230
Washer Fluid Check.....	250
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	259
See: Wipers and Washers.....	60
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	270
Wheels and Tires.....	261
General Information.....	261
Windows and Mirrors.....	72
Windshield Washers.....	61
Front Camera Washer.....	61
Windshield Wipers.....	60
Intermittent Wipe.....	60
Speed Dependent Wipers.....	60
Winter Tires	
See: Using Winter Tires.....	266
Wipers and Washers.....	60

